Thank you very much for choosing a new Chery vehicle.

To know how to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After you read this manual, please leave it in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that Chery authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory trained technicians and OEM parts which will guarantee your satisfaction. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying vehicle will affect the vehicle maneuverability, safety or durability.

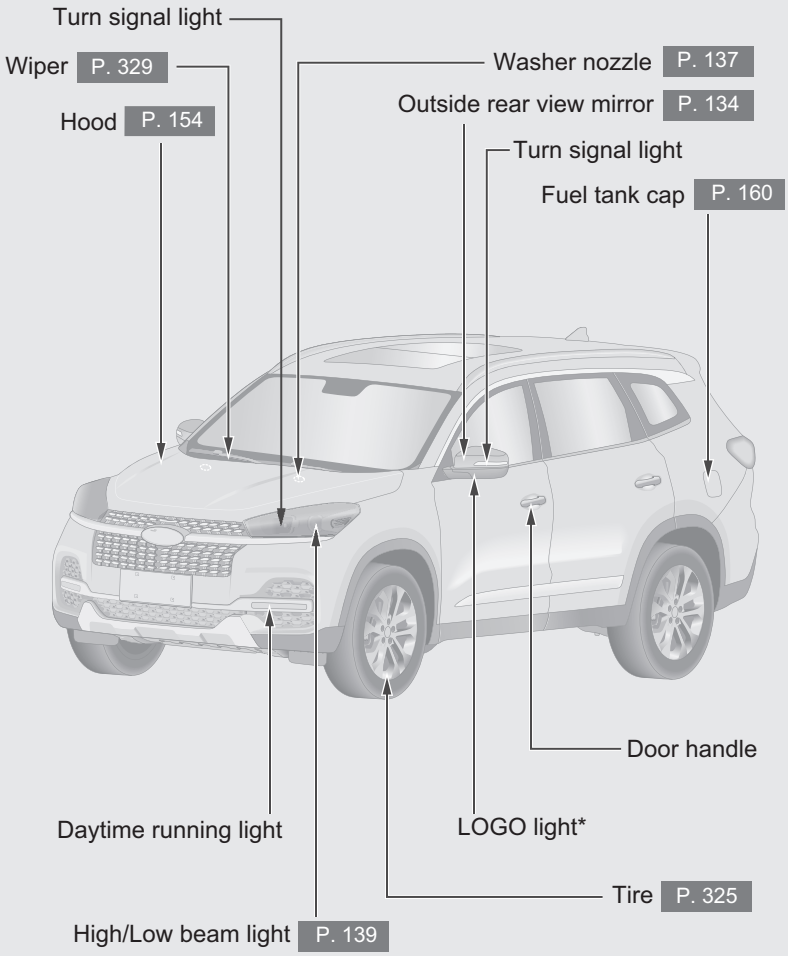
Depending on specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

All data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot serve as the basis for lodging a claim.

Wish you a pleasant driving!

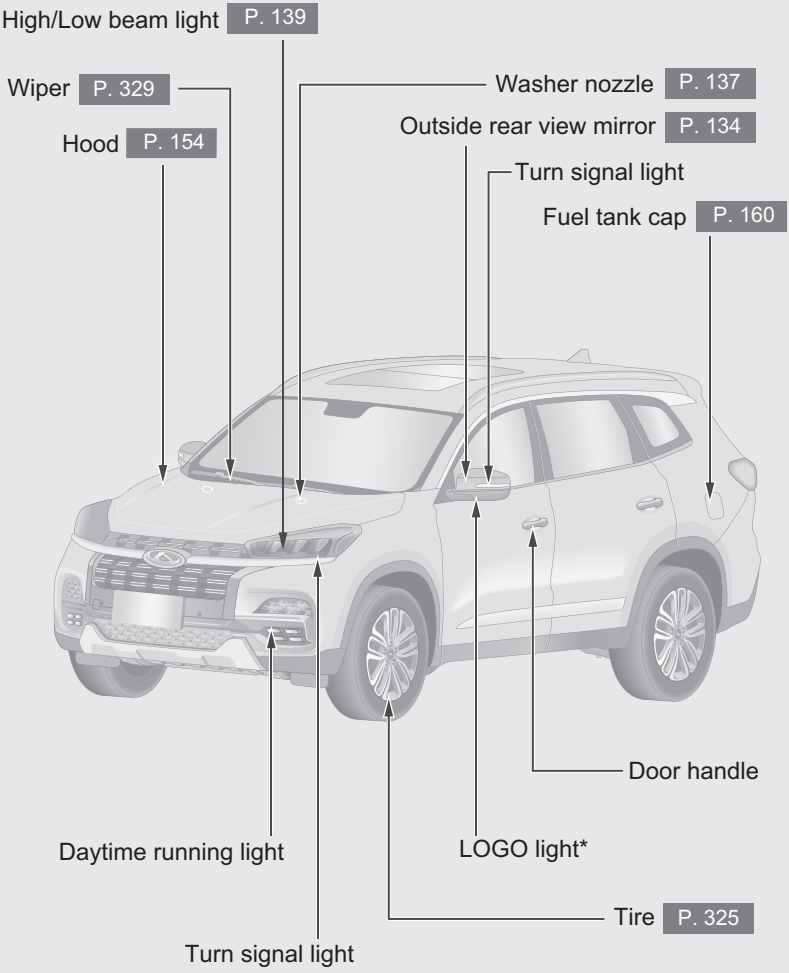
Version No: T18OM21EN03
Issued August 2021

Front bumper style A

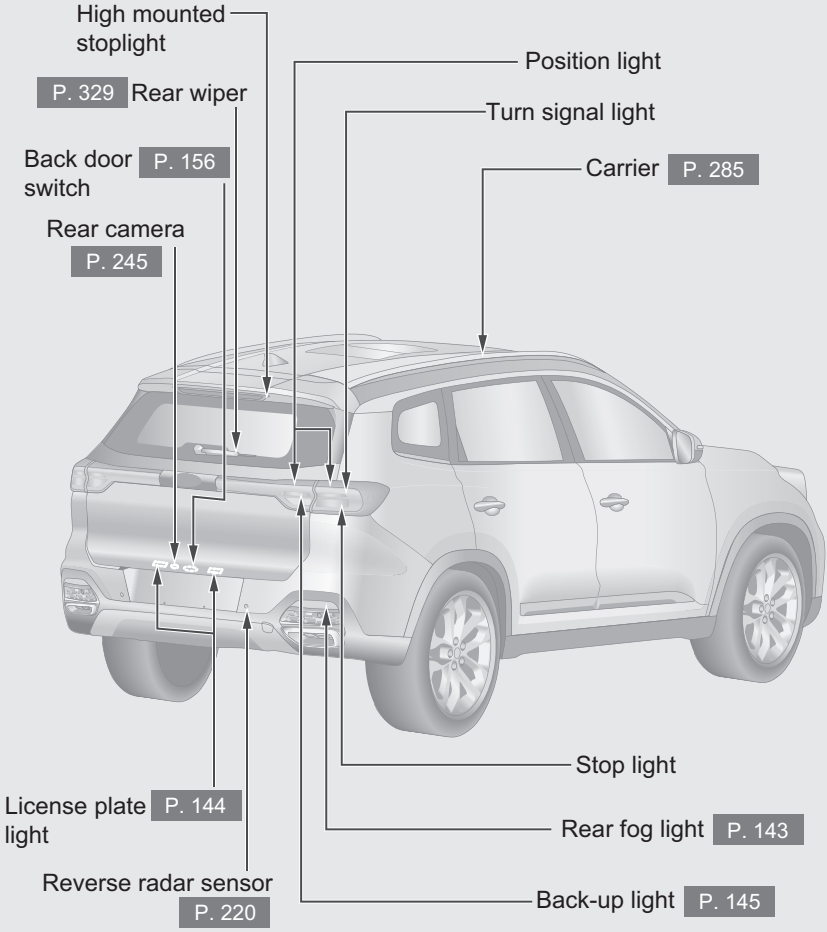


*Indicate if equipped

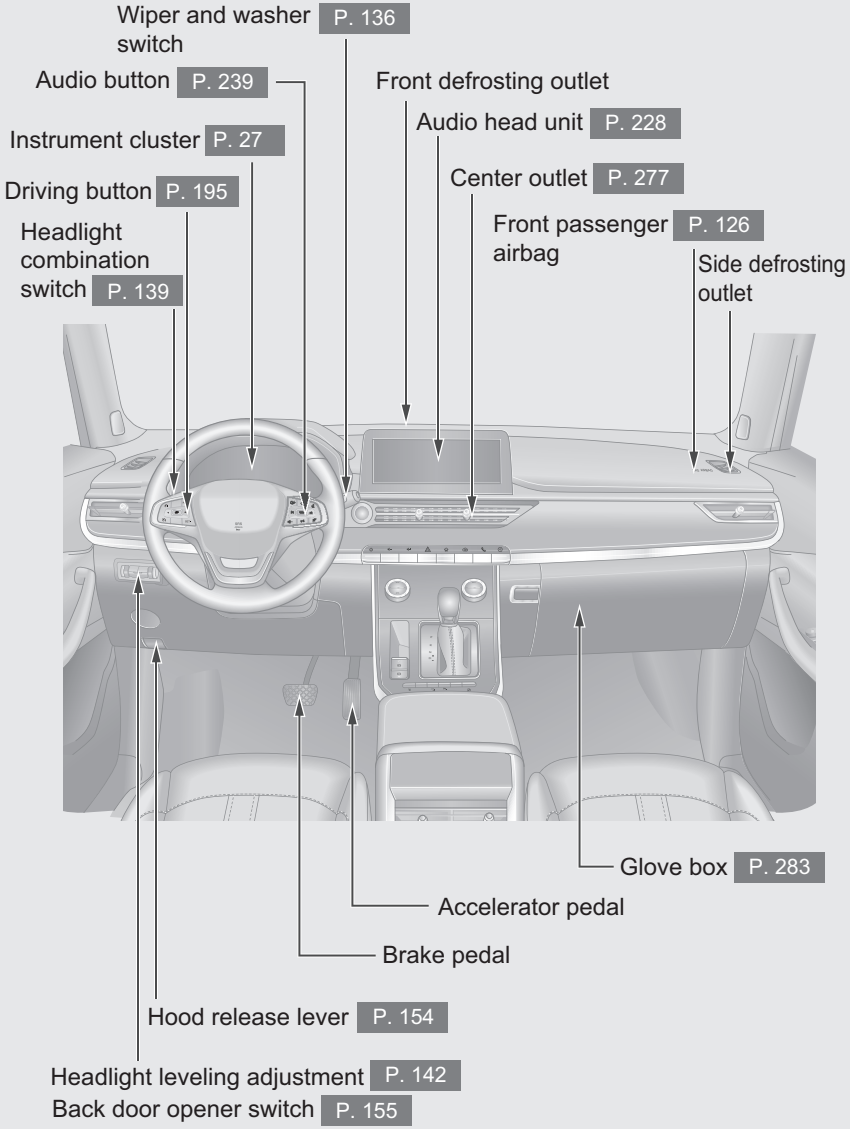
Front bumper style B

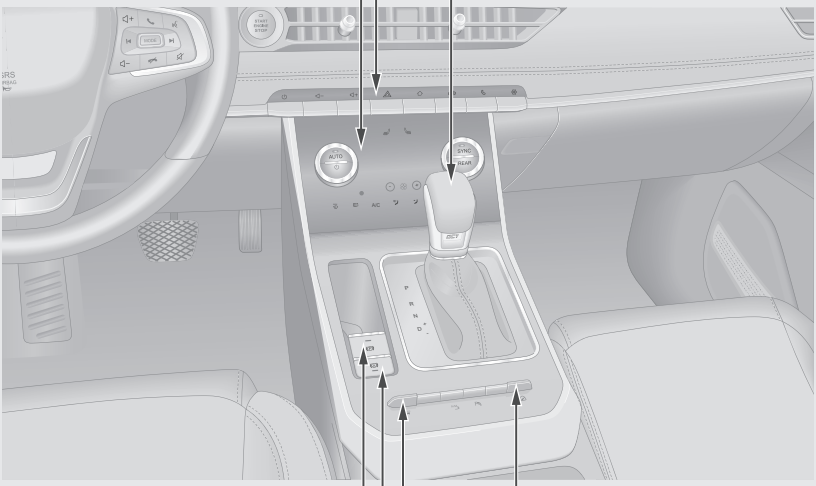


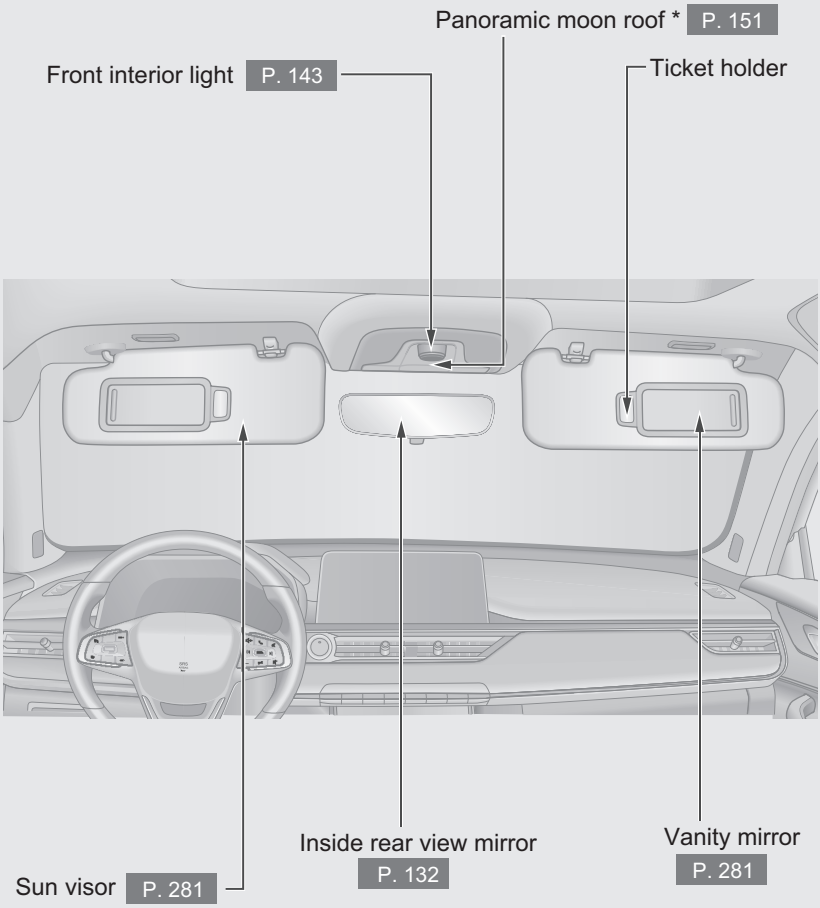
*Indicate if equipped



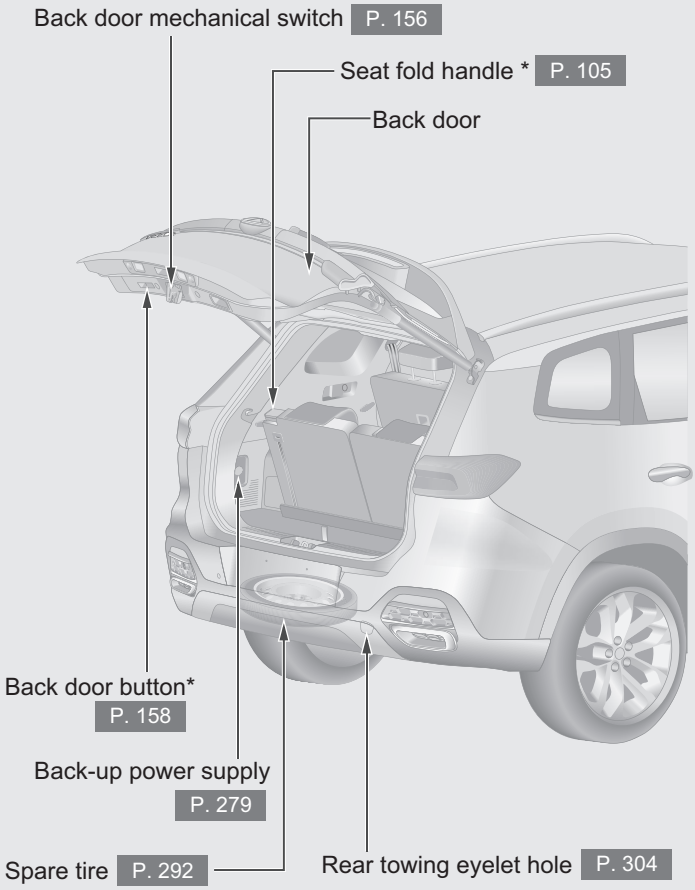
*Indicate if equipped


Wiper and washer switch P. 136
Audio button P. 239
Instrument cluster P. 27
Driving button P. 195
Headlight combination switch P. 139
Front defrosting outlet
Audio head unit P. 228
Center outlet P. 277
Front passenger airbag P. 126
Side defrosting outlet
Glove box P. 283
Accelerator pedal
Brake pedal
Hood release lever P. 154
Headlight leveling adjustment P. 142
Back door opener switch P. 155


P. 228 Audio control panel
Air conditioning control panel
P. 252,260
Shift lever P. 171
Hill Descent Control System (HDC)
P. 194
Driving mode P. 182
P. 183 Electrical Parking button
Auto hold switch P. 185

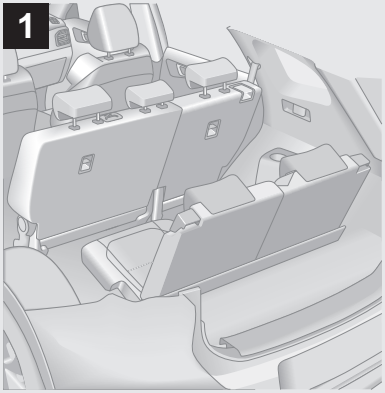


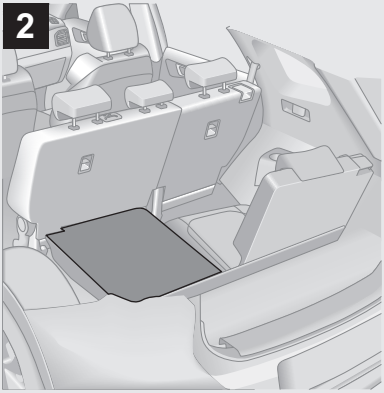
*Indicate if equipped

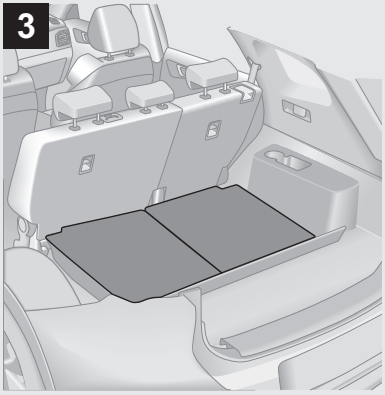


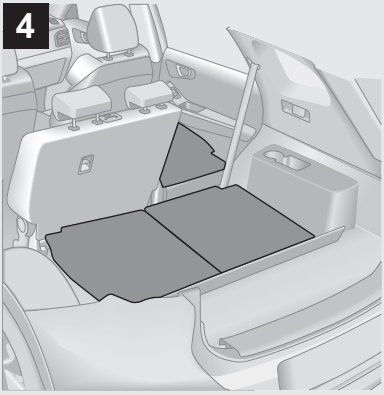
*Indicate if equipped

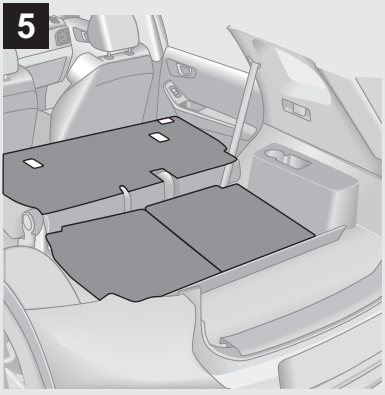
Seat fold method





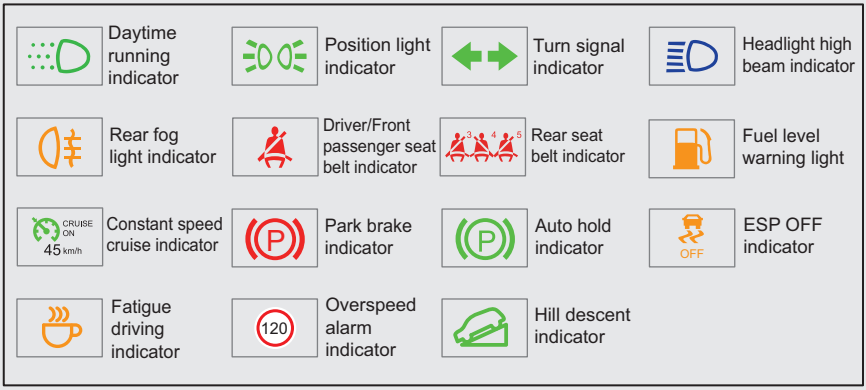




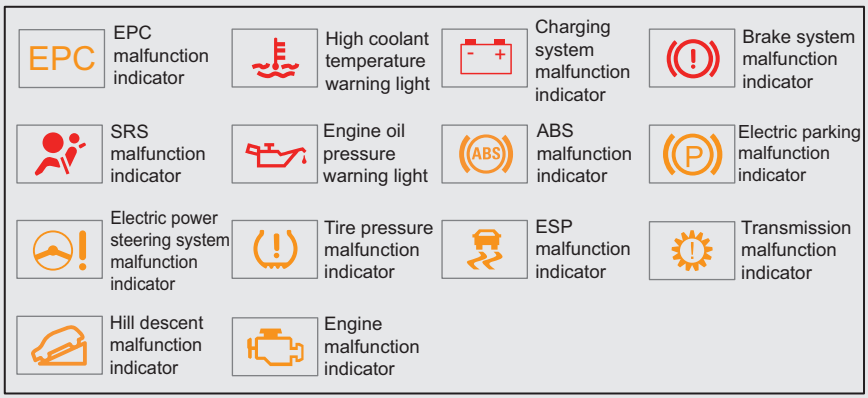


Warning lights and indicators

If the following indicators come on after engine started or during driving, please handle it according to the actual situation:



If the following warning lights come on after engine started or during driving, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection:



For details about indicators, refer to the related chapter

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual
How to Read This Manual 2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual
Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection
User Registration Certificate 4
Chery Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection
New Vehicle Inspection ... 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in
New Vehicle Break-in 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle
Saving Fuel 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle
Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 15
After Starting Engine 16
When Driving 16
Parking Operations 16
Parking on Slope 17
Check the Exhaust System 19

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions
Off-road Driving 19

1-10. Precautions when Driving in the Rain
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 20
Driving Through Water 20

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions
Winter Driving Tips 21
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 22
Tire Chains 23

2. INSTRUMENT PANEL

2-1. Instrument Panel Overview
Instrument Panel Configuration Overview ... 26

2-2. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)
Instrument Cluster 27
Speedometer 27
Tachometer 28
Fuel Gauge 28
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 29
Engine Warming Up Function 29
LCD Display View Display Information 30
Inquiry Setting Screen 33

2-3. Instrument cluster (7-inch) (If Equipped)
Instrument Cluster 38
Speedometer 38
Tachometer 39
Fuel Gauge 39
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 40
Engine Warming Up Function 40

Information Display Area View 41
Setting Screen 44

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch) (If Equipped)

Instrument Cluster 53
Speedometer 54
Tachometer 54
Fuel Gauge 54
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 55
Engine Warming Up Function 56
Information Display Area Overview 56
Setting Screen 58

2-5. Indicators and Malfunction Indicators

Indicators and Malfunction Indicators 70
Daytime Running Indicator 70
Position Light Indicator ... 70
Turning Signal Indicator 71
High Beam Indicator 71
Rear Fog Indicator 71
Front Seat Belt Indicator 71
Rear Seat Belt Indicator (If Equipped) 71
Brake System Malfunction Indicator 71
Electrical Parking Indicator 72
Electrical Parking Malfunction Indicator 72
Auto Hold Indicator 72
Anti-lock Brake System Malfunction Indicator 72
Hill Descent Indicator 72
Hill Descent Malfunction Indicator 72
ESP Indicator 73
ESP OFF Indicator 73
Charging System Indicator 73
High Coolant Temperature Warning Indicator 73
Low Fuel Level Warning Indicator 73
Airbag Malfunction Indicator 73
Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator 74
Electric Power Steering Malfunction Indicator 74
Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Indicator 74
EPC Malfunction Indicator 74
Engine Malfunction Indicator 74
Transmission Malfunction Indicator 74

3. OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

3-1. Smart Key

Smart Key 78
Mechanical Key 79
Replacing Smart Key Battery 79
Keyless Entry 81
Keyless Entry (If Equipped) 84

3-2. Anti-Theft System

Anti-Theft System 87
Vehicle Fortifying 88
Smart Bracelet Key (If Equipped) 90

3-3. Remote Control System (If Equipped)

Starting Vehicle Remotely 95

3-4. Door Locks

Door Lock Switch 96

3-5. Horn

Horn 97

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 98

3-6. Adjusting Steering Wheel

Adjusting Steering Wheel 99

3-7. Seat

Front Seats 100
Second Row Seats (5-seat) 104
Second Row Seats (7-seat) 105
Third Row Seat (7-seat, Folding Seats) 107
Head Restraints 108

3-8. Seat Belts

Seat Belts 109
Seat Belt Pretensioner ... 112

3-9. Child Restraint Systems

Safety Instruction for Using Child Restraint System 115
Child Restraint System Group 117
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 118
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 120
Child Restraint System Installation 121

3-10. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS) 125
Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag ... 127

3-11. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 132
Outside Rear View Mirror 133

3-12. Wiper and Washer System

Wiper Combination Switch 136
Front Washer Operation Instructions 137
Rear Wiper Operation Instructions 137
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 138

3-13. Vehicle Light

Headlight Combination Switch 139
Light Fogging Instructions 145

3-14. Windows

Power Windows 146
Window Remote Control Function (if equipped) 148
Window Jam Protection Function (if equipped) 149

3-15. Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A) 151
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B) 152
Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If equipped) 153
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 154

3-16. Hood

Hood 154

3-17. Back Door

Back Door 155

3-18. Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap 160

4. STARTING AND DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Engine Start Stop Switch

Engine Start Stop Switch 166

Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission) 167

4-2. Starting Engine

Before Starting Engine 168
Starting Engine 168
After Starting Engine 169
Turning off Engine 169
Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency 170
Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped) 171
Adaptive Engine Control System 173
Particulate Filter (GPF) (If Equipped) 173

4-3. Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 174

4-4. Transmission

Manual Transmission (6MT) 175
Automatic Transmission 177
Driving Mode (If Equipped) 182

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) 182
Auto Hold 185
Vacuum Booster 187
Brake 188

4-6. Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 189
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 190
Operation Precautions ... 192

4-7. Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 194

4-8. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System 195
Adaptive Cruise Control System (If Equipped) 197
Active Speed Limit (If Equipped) 203

4-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 204

4-10. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) 206

4-11. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System 208
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 210
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 211

4-12. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 212

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 213
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 214
Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 214

4-13. Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) 215

4-14. Speed Limit Assist System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System 216

4-15. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 217
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Malfunction Warning 217

4-16. Reversing Radar System

Reversing Radar System 220
Usage Instructions 223
Cleaning Reversing Radar Sensor 226

5. FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

5-1. Audio and Entertainment System

Audio Control Panel 228
Media 230
Bluetooth Phone 230
Cloudrive 230
Electronic Version of Audio Owner's Manual 231
Setting 231
Phone-link (If Equipped) 233
Audio Button 239

5-2. Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)

Driving Recorder (DVR) 239

5-3. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging 243

5-4. Reversing View Monitor (If Equipped)

Reversing View Monitor and Vehicle Guideline ...244

5-5. Panoramic View Monitor (If Equipped)

Panoramic View Monitor 246
Camera Layout 247
Turning On and Off Panoramic View Monitor System 247
3D Panoramic View 248
Switching between single side view and panoramic view 249
3D Left/Right Side View 249
Rear Magnified View 250
Static/Dynamic Reverse Guideline 250
Camera Diagnostic Function 250

5-6. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning System (If Equipped) 252
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (electric A/C) 258
Dual Automatic Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 260

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (Automatic Air Conditioning) 268
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 270
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) ... 271
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 272
Anion Function (If Equipped) 273
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) ... 273
Blower Advanced ON and Delayed OFF Function (If Equipped) ... 273
Center Armrest Refrigeration Function (If Equipped) 274
Mode Adjustment 275
Air Outlets Airflow Control 277

5-7. Power Outlet

Power Outlet 278

5-8. Cup Holders

Cup Holders 280

5-9. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 281

5-10. Assist Grips and Rear Center Armrest

Assist Grips 281
Center Armrest (Second Row) 282

5-11. Storage Space

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Handling Vehicle In Emergency

Hazard Light 288
Reflective Vest 289
Warning Triangle 289
Spare Tools 289

6-2. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving 290
Repairing Tire in Emergency (If Equipped) 290
Tire Replacement 292

6-3. If Your Vehicle Overheats

If Your Vehicle Overheats 297

6-4. Replacing Fuse

Fuse 298
Fuse Box Distribution 298
Checking Fuse 299
Replacing Fuse 300

6-5. Towing Vehicle

Towing Precautions 301
Emergency Towing 302
Installing Towing Eyelet 304

6-6. Removing Battery

Removing Battery 305

6-7. If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally

Simple Checks 306
Starting a Flooded Engine 307

6-8. Jump-starting

Jump-starting 307
Jump-starting Procedures 307

6-9. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch 309

6-10. Back Door Emergency Opening
Emergency Opening 310
6-11. ERA-GLONASS (If Equipped)
ERA-GLONASS 310

7. SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE
7-1. Service Arrangements
Service Arrangements ... 312
Service List 312
Service Requests 312
7-2. If You Need Help
Service Satisfaction 312
7-3. Service of Chery Authorized Service Station
7-4. Communicate Information

8. MAINTENANCE
8-1. Repair and Maintenance
Repair and Maintenance 316
8-2. Scheduled Maintenance
Scheduled Maintenance 317
Engine Compartment Overview 318
Checking Engine Oil Level 318
Checking Transmission Oil Level 320
Checking Brake Fluid Level 320
Checking Coolant Level 321
Checking Radiator and Condenser 322
Checking Drive Belt 323
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure 323
Checking Tires 325
Tire Rotation 325
Checking Battery 326
Checking Generator 326
Adding Windshield Washer Fluid 327
Checking Wiper Blades 327
Replacing Wiper Blades 329
Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter 330
Light Position 330
Headlight Leveling Adjustment 332
8-3. Cleaning and Maintaining Vehicle
Exterior Maintenance 332
Glossy Metal Maintenance 334
Alloy Wheel Maintenance 334
Vehicle Bottom Maintenance 335
Rusty Prevention 335
Interior Maintenance 336
Cleaning Interior Decoration and Interior Trim 337
8-4. Regular Maintenance
First Maintenance Card 338
Maintenance Schedule ... 340

9. SPECIFICATIONS
9-1. Vehicle Identification Number
Vehicle Identification Number 346
9-2. Vehicle Specifications
Vehicle Model and Type 348
Vehicle Dimensions 349
Vehicle Weight 350

Vehicle Performance 352
Engine Performance 352
Fuel System 353
Lubrication System 354
Cooling System 356
Suspension System 356
Steering System 357
Brake System 358
Wheel Alignment 359
Wheel and Tire 360
Transmission Fluid 361
Gearbox Parameters 361
Windshield Washer 362
Battery 362

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual
How to Read This Manual 2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual
Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection
User Registration Certificate 4
Chery Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection
New Vehicle Inspection ... 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in
New Vehicle Break-in 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle
Saving Fuel 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle
Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 15
After Starting Engine 16
When Driving 16
Parking Operations 16
Parking on Slope 17
Check the Exhaust System 19

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions
Off-road Driving 19

1-10. Precautions when Driving in the Rain
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 20
Driving Through Water 20

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions
Winter Driving Tips 21
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 22
Tire Chains 23

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three methods available for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each method.

Table of Contents

Consult the general "Table of Contents" to determine which chapter of the USER MANUAL contains the information you need and the "Chapter Contents" to determine its accurate location.

Pictorial Index

The "Pictorial Index" is a helpful assistant to find the required information quickly, especially when you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies. More details about the index, refer to Page 363.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to the information of particular importance. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your property, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Indicates that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

READ

Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully. So that, not only you can enjoy driving pleasure but also vehicle can be kept in good condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, the Chery authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. The service station will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: ● VEHICLE ● USER MANUAL ● PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Chery Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performance	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and USER MANUAL	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E22-E100	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk: Date:				
Signature of User: Date:				

*: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

Chery authorized service station will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at the Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the USER MANUAL to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a "×" for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person-to-Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Dealer of Sales & Service)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at the Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the USER MANUAL to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person-to-Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

The dealer of sales & service has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery before deliver the vehicle to you. The dealer of sales & service of Chery Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

Dealer unit will verify the vehicle to you in accordance with "Chery Vehicle Delivery Card", and introduce the knowledge of using the vehicle, which will be signed by salesman and user.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this vehicle has pass delivery inspection as regulated by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. and quality meets technical specification of Chery.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: ● VEHICLE ● USER MANUAL ● PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Since the frictional resistance between the moving parts of new vehicle is much larger in the initial use than normal conditions. The break-in effect of initial use will have a great impact on the vehicle's life, operation reliability and economy, so the use of new vehicle must strictly enforce the regulations. The break-in period is 3,000 kilometers in general.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Prohibit driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not be more than 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period:

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, it is necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. When the engine is cold, do not run the engine at its maximum speed whether in neutral or in other driving gears.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also need break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increasing depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving Fuel

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel waste (More details, refer to "8-2. Checking Tire Inflation Pressure").
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy load increases engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold winter will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starts.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid engine out of gear or overspeed. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Driving following the traffic lights can minimize parking times, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. It will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as you can.

10.Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.

11.Keep a proper vehicle speed on the highway. The faster vehicle speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.

12.Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.

13.Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.

14.Adjust vehicle and keep it in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without adjusted properly, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. You must perform maintenance periodically if you want to extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if always driving under severe conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

⚠ WARNING

If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Especially make sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper (More details, refer to "8-2. Checking Coolant Level").
3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs (Please refer to "Exhaust Gas" in this section).
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper (More details, refer to "8-2. Checking Engine Oil Level").

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure each the indication of gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not be pulled to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safety driving, park the vehicle in a place with wide road, good view without affecting traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

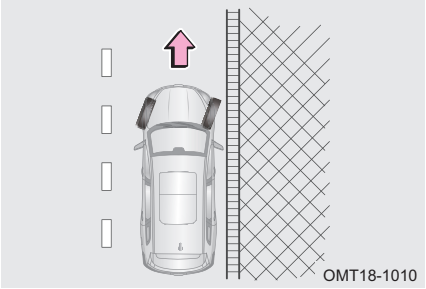
1. Depress clutch (vehicle with manual transmission) and brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. For vehicle with automatic transmission: Move shift lever to "P" position. For vehicle with manual transmission: Move shift lever to neutral position.
4. Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the vehicle's key with you.

Parking on Slope

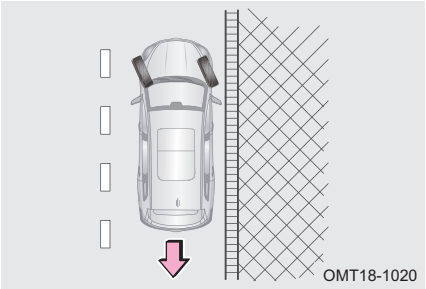
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly by brake force of park brake. Failure to apply park brake or park brake malfunction may cause the vehicle slide downwards along slope and injury personal or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face tires toward one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



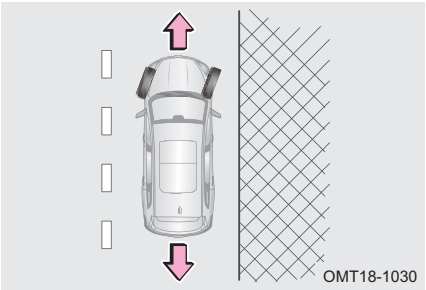
If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to right by a certain angle to make front part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding forward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to left by a certain angle to make rear part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding backward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on roadside, turn steering wheel right by a large angle, to prevent vehicle from driving into center of road after sliding forward/ backward along the slope. Turn steering wheel to side of road so that vehicle is far away from center of road when moving, then apply the park brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the sidewalk in front of your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked usually. If a change in exhaust gas sound is found, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in an spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Check the Exhaust System

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell the exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a change in the sound of exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When lifting the vehicle for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off the road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off the road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on the road covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personnel injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10.Precautions when Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

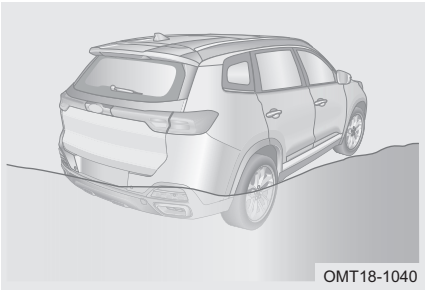
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and road will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on an expressway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden engine braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water


OMT18-1040

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system work normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal or a rush driving. Doing so may prevent water from splashing into the engine.

2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission oil, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that has accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11.Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

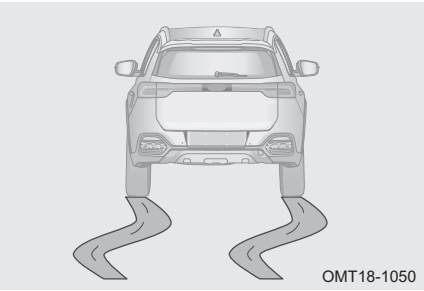
- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use coolant recommended by Chery. More details about coolant type selection, refer to "9-2. Cooling System".
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.

- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection, refer to "9-2. Lubrication System".
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at Chery authorized service stations and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cable, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternatives washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow



Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. To reduce the torque and avoid slipping, you can use 2nd gear (vehicle with manual transmission) when starting off vehicle on ice or snow covered road surfaces. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and driving forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, failure to do so may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires.

Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided with the tire chains;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged, vehicle damage resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult Chery authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains.
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will effect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate and decelerate suddenly etc.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

2-1. Instrument Panel Overview
Instrument Panel Configuration Overview ...26

2-2. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)
Instrument Cluster 27
Speedometer 27
Tachometer 28
Fuel Gauge 28
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 29
Engine Warming Up Function 29
LCD Display View
Display Information 30
Inquiry Setting Screen 33

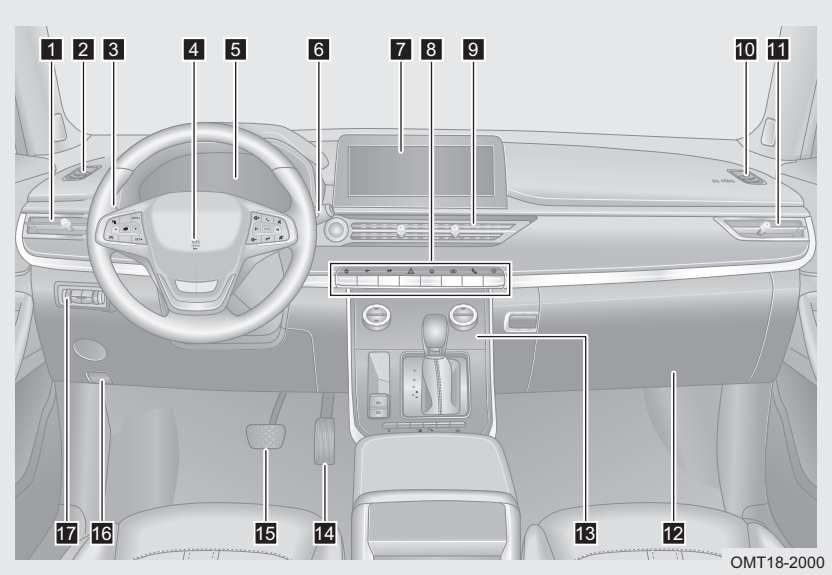
2-3. Instrument cluster (7-inch) (If Equipped)
Instrument Cluster 38
Speedometer 38
Tachometer 39
Fuel Gauge 39
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 40
Engine Warming Up Function 40
Information Display Area View 41
Setting Screen 44

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch) (If Equipped)
Instrument Cluster 53
Speedometer 54
Tachometer 54
Fuel Gauge 54
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 55
Engine Warming Up Function 56
Information Display Area Overview 56
Setting Screen 58

2-5. Indicators and Malfunction Indicators
Indicators and Malfunction Indicators 70
Daytime Running Indicator 70
Position Light Indicator 70
Turning Signal Indicator ... 71
High Beam Indicator 71
Rear Fog Indicator 71
Front Seat Belt Indicator 71
Rear Seat Belt Indicator (If Equipped) 71
Brake System Malfunction Indicator 71
Electrical Parking Indicator 72
Electrical Parking Malfunction Indicator 72
Auto Hold Indicator 72
Anti-lock Brake System Malfunction Indicator 72
Hill Descent Indicator 72
Hill Descent Malfunction Indicator 72
ESP Indicator 73
ESP OFF Indicator 73
Charging System Indicator 73
High Coolant Temperature Warning Indicator 73
Low Fuel Level Warning Indicator 73
Airbag Malfunction Indicator 73
Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator 74
Electric Power Steering Malfunction Indicator 74
Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Indicator 74
EPC Malfunction Indicator 74
Engine Malfunction Indicator 74
Transmission Malfunction Indicator 74

2-1. Instrument Panel Overview

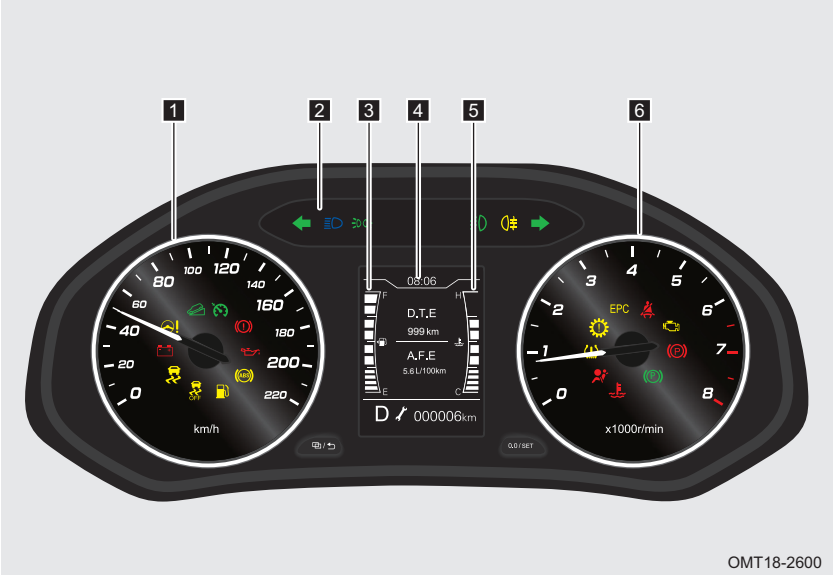
Instrument Panel Configuration Overview



1 Air conditioning left side outlets
2 Air conditioning left side defrosting outlets
3 Headlight combination switch
4 Driver airbag/horn
5 Instrument cluster
6 Wiper combination switch
7 Audio system
8 Audio control panel
9 Center outlets
10 Air conditioning right side defrosting outlets
11 Air conditioning right side outlets
12 Glove box
13 A/C control panel
14 Accelerator pedal
15 Brake pedal
16 Hood release lever
17 Headlight leveling switch
Power back door switch (if equipped)

2-2. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)

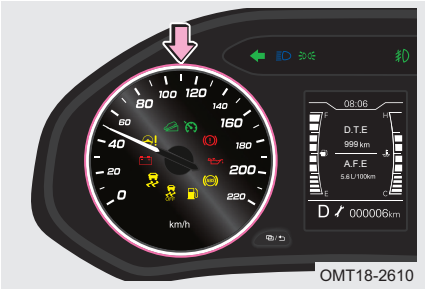
Instrument Cluster



OMT18-2600

1 Speedometer
2 Warning lights and indicator lights
3 Fuel gauge
4 LCD display
5 Engine coolant temperature gauge
6 Tachometer

Speedometer



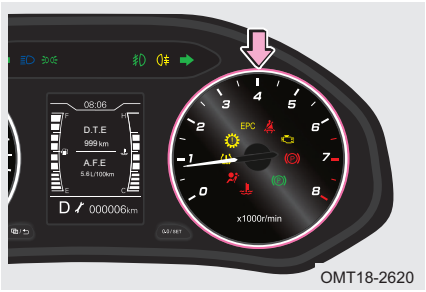
OMT18-2610

The speed uses pointer to display, and is used to indicate current vehicle speed. (Unit: km/h).

CAUTION

The speedometer will be affected by the tire size of your vehicle. Only tires of Chery original size can be used, otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed. More details about tire specifications, refer to "9-2. Vehicle Specifications".

Tachometer



OMT18-2620

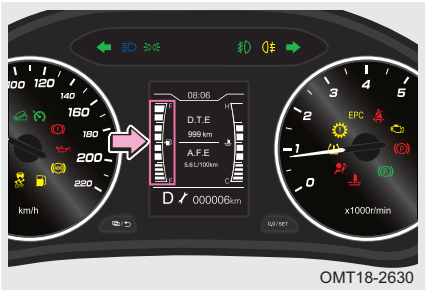
The tachometer uses pointer to indicate current engine speed (Unit: x1000 rpm).

Red scale on dial indicate allowable maximum engine speed range after engine break-in period. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

CAUTION

- Do not keep the engine speed in the red scale value for a long period of time, or engine may be seriously damaged.
- Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.

Fuel Gauge



OMT18-2630

The fuel gauge indicates current amount of remaining fuel in the fuel tank.

To get an accurate fuel gauge reading, stop the vehicle on level ground and turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, observe the fuel gauge display to judge the current remaining fuel.

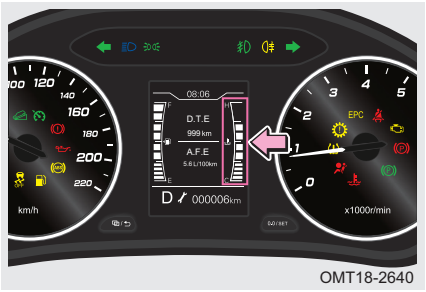
Fuel tank capacity: 51 L

When the indicator approaches E or the low fuel level warning light comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel in the fuel tank is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading may be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



OMT18-2640

When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, it indicates current engine coolant temperature.

- At C or approaching C (low temperature range)

When beginning to warm up, the engine may stay in this range for a short time. The engine should not be operated at a high speed in this temperature range. In addition, the engine load should not be excessive.

Please contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible if the indication remains in this temperature range for a long time.

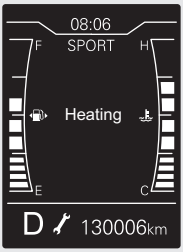
- At H or approaching H (overheating range)

When the indication reaches H range, or the high coolant temperature warning light comes on, it indicates that engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle immediately and turn off the engine start stop switch after idling for several minutes. After the engine cools down, identify the reason. If reason can not be found, please contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not open the coolant reservoir cap if the engine is hot. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be damaged seriously.

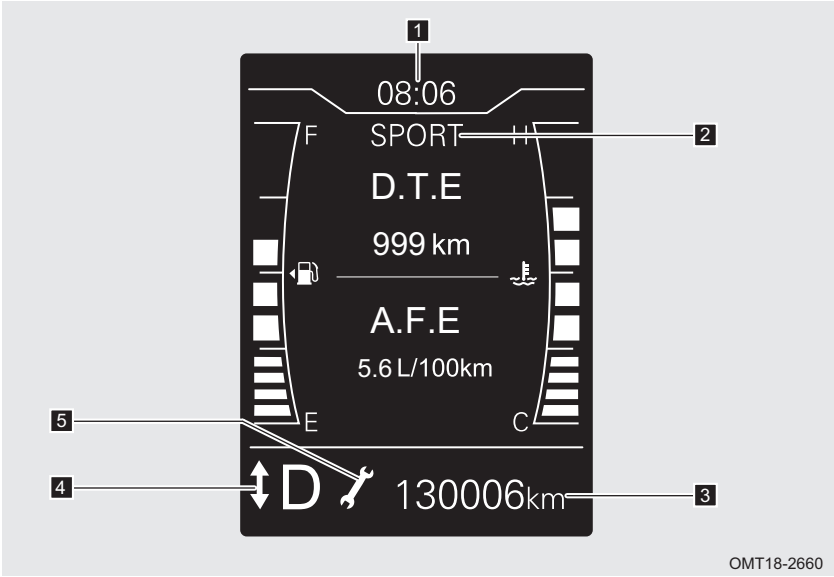
Engine Warming Up Function



OMT18-2650

Start engine, and text prompts will be displayed on LCD display when engine coolant temperature is low, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently. After engine coolant temperature is increased, text prompts will be displayed on LCD display, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

LCD Display View Display Information

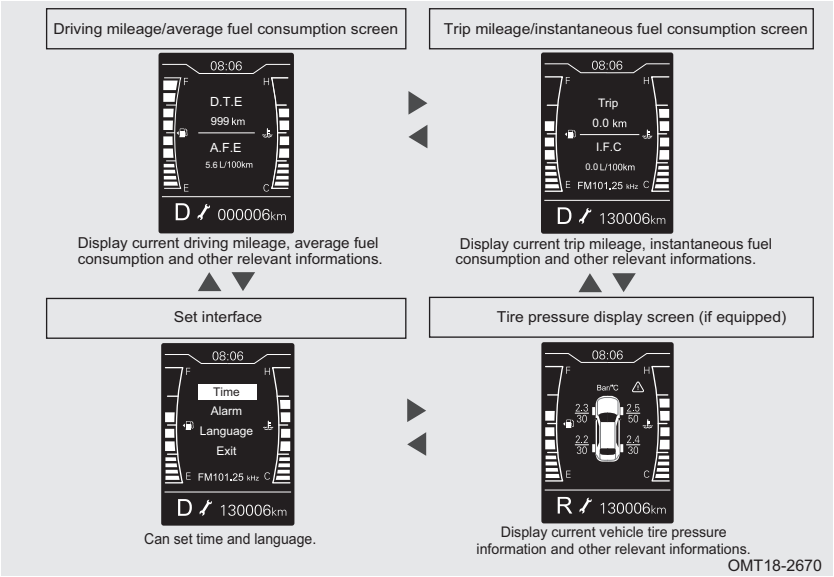


1 Time
2 ECO/SPORT mode (if equipped)
3 Total mileage
4 Gear range information
5 Maintenance indicator

■ Conventional display and inquiry setting screen operation

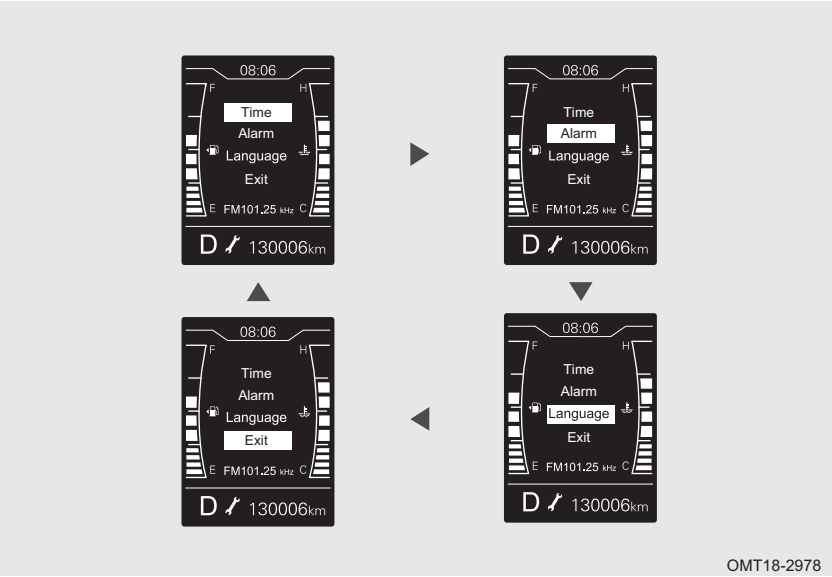
● Conventional display screen

The general display interface includes the following interface, Short press the left button " " of the instrument to cycle the following interface. Press the right button " 0.0/SET " of the instrument to enter the setting interface.



● Set interface

The setting interface includes the following interface, short press the left button " " of the instrument to switch to different settings, and then press the right button " 0.0/SET " of the instrument again to enter the setting.

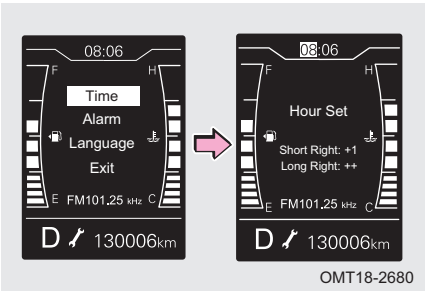


CAUTION
Use the information screen as a reference. Please refer to actual vehicle.

Inquiry Setting Screen

● Time setting

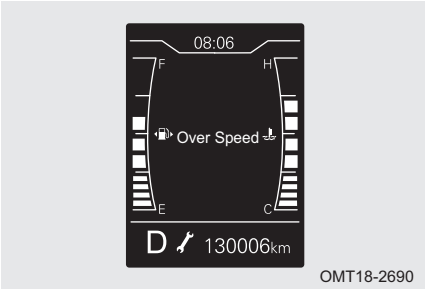
Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:



OMT18-2680

1. On the setting screen, short press the turn-left button " " of the meter to switch to the time setting, short press the turn-right button " 0.0/SET " again to enter the time setting.
2. On the time setting screen, short press the turn-left button " " of the meter to switch between hour setting/minute setting, short press/long press the turn-right button " 0.0/SET " of the meter for the time setting, keep 5 s without operation/short press the turn-left button to exit the time setting.

● Overspeed alarm



OMT18-2690

When speed reaches ≥ 120 km/h, driving information display screen pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than the setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

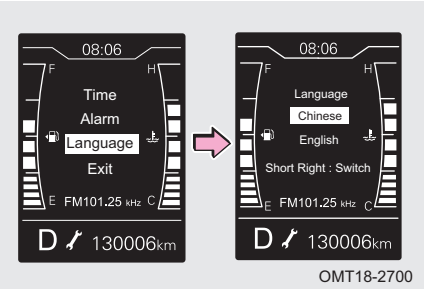
⚠ CAUTION
The meter buzzer will sound not in all alarm conditions.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

● Language setting

Language can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:



OMT18-2700

1. On the setting screen, short press the turn-left button " " of the meter to switch to the language setting, short press the turn-right button " 0.0/SET " again to enter the language setting.
2. On the language setting screen, short press the turn-right button " 0.0/SET " of the meter to switch between Russian/English, keep 5 s without operation/short press the turn-left button " " to exit the language setting.

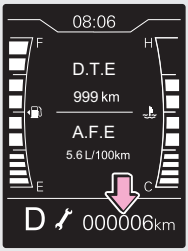
READ

Language adjustment can also be set by audio and entertainment systems.

● LCD display information

LCD display is used to display total mileage, time, gear position (vehicle with automatic transmission), automatic transmission mode (ECO/SPORT), integrated display information, average fuel consumption, instantaneous fuel consumption, driving mileage, trip mileage, average speed, door open status, reversing radar, upshift/downshift (vehicle with manual transmission), maintenance indicator, graphic alarm information.

● Total mileage



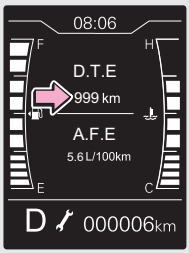
OMT18-2710

Display total mileage of the vehicle.

The displayed range of the total mileage is 0 - 999,999 km.

It will always display "999,999" km if beyond the range.

● Driving mileage



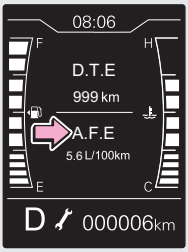
OMT18-2720

Display estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel.

This distance is calculated based on the average fuel consumption. Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

If only a small amount of fuel is added to the fuel tank, the display may not be updated.

● Average fuel consumption



OMT18-2730

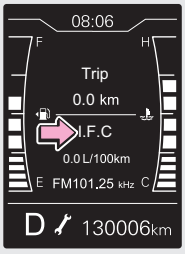
Display average fuel consumption of the vehicle.

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, it displays current value.

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

On driving mileage/average fuel consumption screen, long press " 0.0/SET " to enter average fuel consumption reset.

● Instantaneous fuel consumption



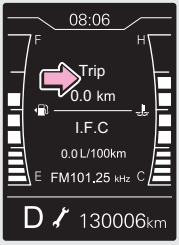
OMT18-2740

Display vehicle instantaneous fuel consumption value while driving.

After starting the engine and accelerating, the instantaneous fuel consumption of engine is extremely high. It is the normal phenomenon.

Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

● Trip mileage



OMT18-2750

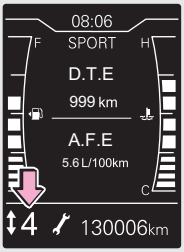
Display the trip mileage of vehicle.

It can be used to calculate distance between two locations after trip mileage is reset.

Trip mileage display range:
0.0 ~ 9999.9 km. When it exceeds 9999.9 km, it will reset and recalculated.

On trip mileage/instantaneous fuel consumption screen, long press " 0.0/SET " to enter trip mileage reset.

● Gear shift hint



OMT18-2760

Displays the gear shift hint signal.

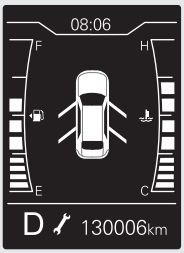
On-board computer display arrow and the target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

When the arrow direction is "▲", prompt you to perform an upshift operation;

When the arrow direction is "▼", prompt you to perform an downshift operation;

The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

● Doors status display



OMT18-2770

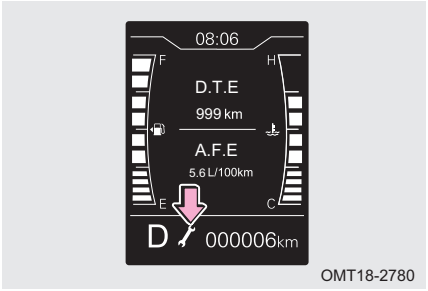
It is used to indicate opening and closing condition of any side doors.

When speed is ≤ 25 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on; When speed is ≥ 25 km/h, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with any door open or not fully closed to prevent the passenger from being thrown out if the door open suddenly, resulting in serious injury or death.

● Maintenance reminder



OMT18-2780

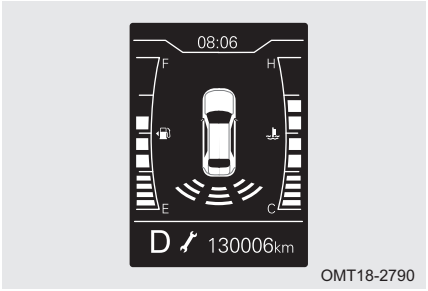
It prompts vehicle need to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage. When it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator comes on on LCD display.

After resetting the maintenance, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals. When it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator comes on on LCD display.

⚠ CAUTION
The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power failure.

● Reversing radar information

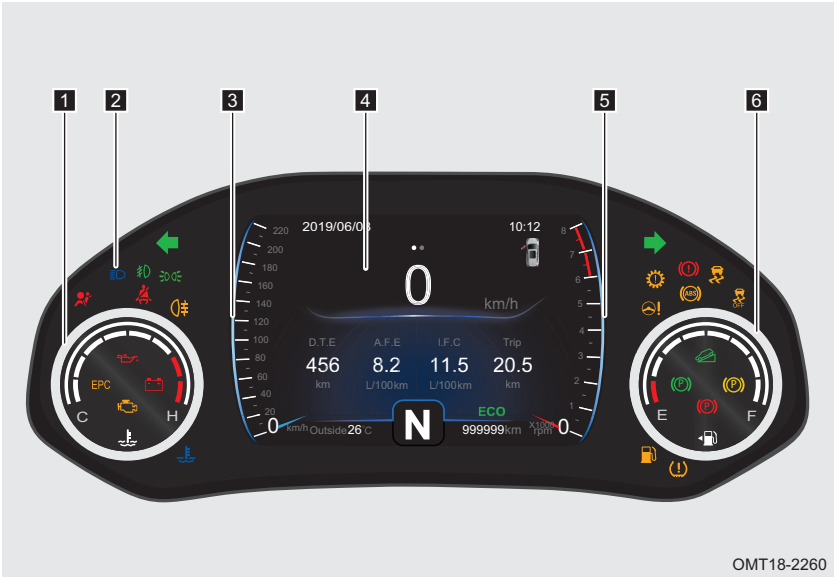


OMT18-2790

When the engine is started and shift the shift lever to R, reversing radar information will be displayed on the center of LCD display. More details, refer to "4-16. Reversing Radar System".

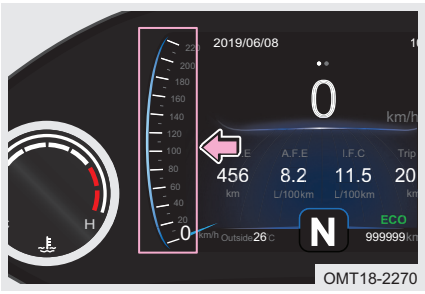
2-3. Instrument cluster (7-inch) (If Equipped)

Instrument Cluster



1 Engine coolant temperature gauge
2 Warning lights and indicator lights
3 Speedometer
4 Information display area
5 Tachometer
6 Fuel gauge

Speedometer

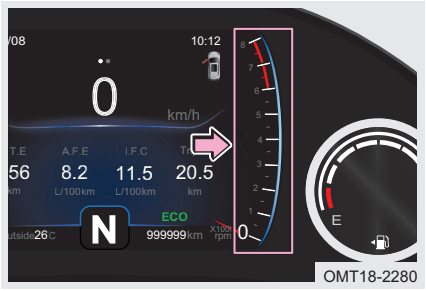


The speedometer uses virtual pointer and central digital display on Information display area, and is used to indicate current vehicle speed (unit: km/h).

CAUTION

The speedometer will be affected by the tire size of your vehicle, please use tires of Chery original size (For details, refer to "9-2. Vehicle Specification"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer



OMT18-2280

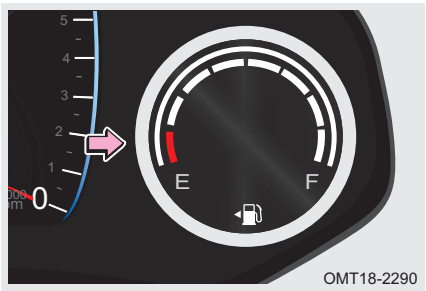
The tachometer uses virtual pointer to indicate current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).

Red scale on dial indicates allowable maximum engine speed range after break-in period of engine. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

CAUTION

- Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
- Do not keep engine speed at the red scale value for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge



OMT18-2290

The fuel gauge indicates current amount of remaining fuel in the fuel tank.

Fuel tank capacity: 51 L

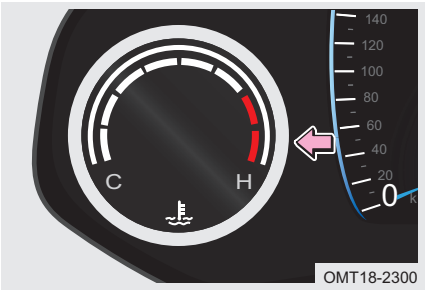
When the indicator turns red or the low fuel level warning light comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

To get an accurate fuel gauge reading, stop the vehicle on level ground and turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, observe the number of segments displayed in fuel gauge to judge the current remaining fuel.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, it indicates current engine coolant temperature.

- At C or approaching C (low temperature range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is at C or approaches to C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, the engine should not be operated at high speed and the engine load should not be too heavy.

After engine is started, it may stay in this range for a short time. If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in this temperature range for a long time, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

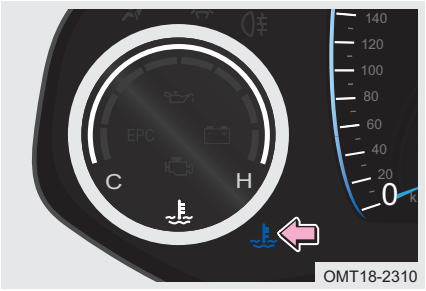
- At H or to H (overheating range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge indication approaches to H range or high coolant temperature indicator comes on, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive the vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn off engine start stop switch after idling for several minutes. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Never open the coolant reservoir cap if the engine is hot. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be damaged seriously.

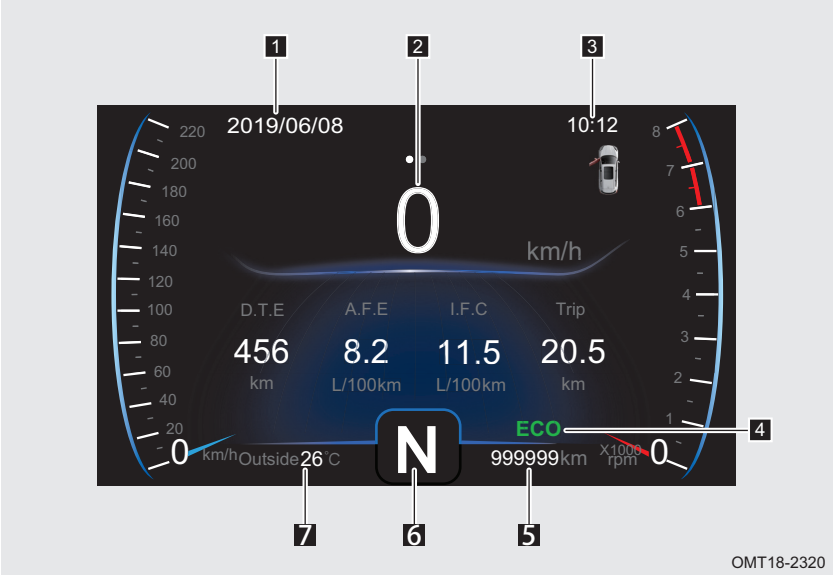
Engine Warming Up Function



Start engine, and pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and coolant temperature indicator will come on when engine coolant temperature is low, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently.

After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and indicator will go off, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Information Display Area View



1 Date display
2 Current vehicle speed
3 Time display
4 ECO/SPORT mode (if equipped)
5 Total mileage
6 Gear range information
7 Outside temperature

READ
The instrument cluster displays " " icon during a Bluetooth call.

■ Conventional display and setting screen operation

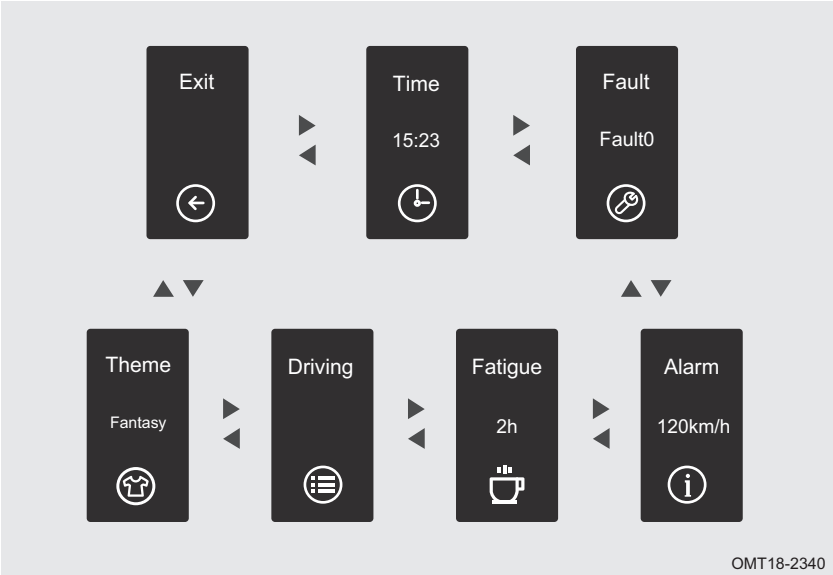
● Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, cycle the following screens by turn-left button "◀" / turn-right button "▶" of the steering wheel combination buttons.



● Setting screen

The setting screen includes the following screens. Short press the enter button " ⏎ " on the steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting screen. Switch to the setting menu by pressing turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of the steering wheel combination buttons, and short press enter button " ⏎ " again to enter the setting.

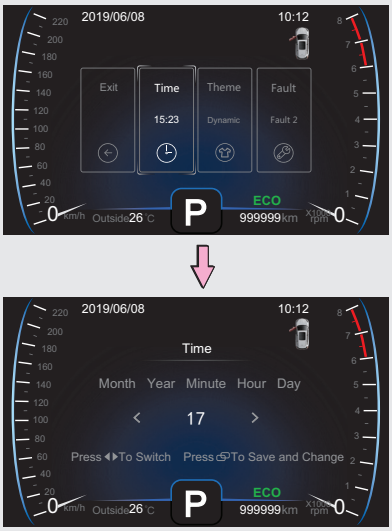


⚠ CAUTION

Information screens are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Setting Screen

● Time setting



OMT18-2350

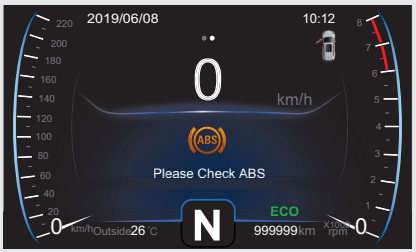
Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the time setting, short press enter button " ⧉ " to enter the time setting screen.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust the year, month, day and time, short press enter button " ⧉ " to save and exit setting.

READ

Time can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

● Malfunction inquiry



OMT18-2370

When there are fault and abnormal information in the system detected by vehicle on-board computer, after engine start stop switch is turned on, information display area immediately displays the alarm information one by one and records it on the fault information screen (for example, please check the ABS system).



OMT18-2380

Fault inquiry can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the fault inquiry, short press enter button " ⏎ " to enter the fault inquiry screen.
2. If there are multiple abnormal informations in the system, the informations will be displayed in the central area of information display area. Operate turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of the steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information.

⚠ CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

● Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

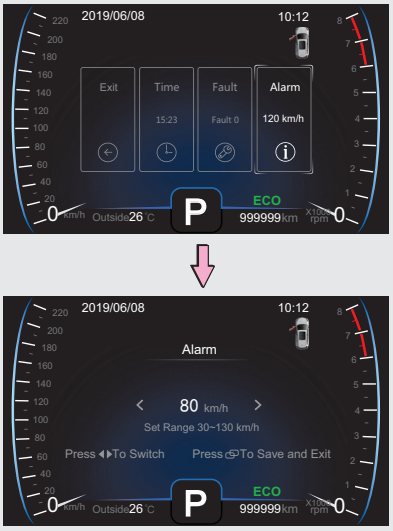


OMT18-2390

When vehicle speed reaches the set value, driving information display screen will display the overspeed indication value " (120) " and alarm buzzer will sound (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon). Warning icon will go off only when vehicle speed is lower than the set value by 5 km/h. If vehicle speed reaches the set value again, alarm will be triggered again.

READ

The meter buzzer will not sound in all alarm conditions.



OMT18-2395

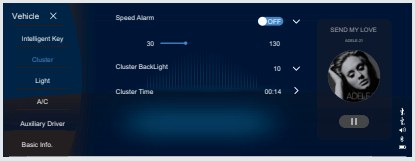
The speed limit can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to overspeed alarm. Short press OK button " ⏎ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter overspeed alarm setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/ decrease by 5 km/h on initial data. Short press OK button " ⏎ " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.



OMT18-2400

Method to set speed limit value with audio and entertainment system:

1. Click "Vehicle settings".
2. Click "Cluster" and select "Speed Alarm" to set speed limit value or turn off overspeed alarm function.

READ

- The speed limit changes by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

● Fatigue driving

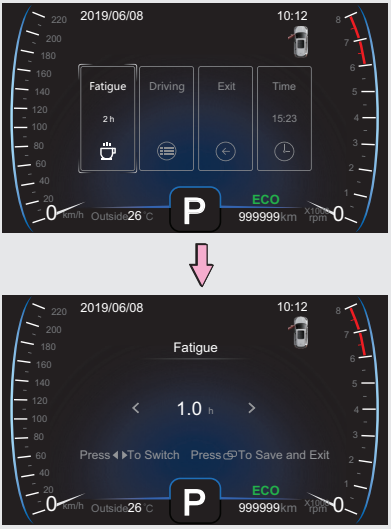


OMT18-2410

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving Time Over--h, Please Take A Rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 s and fatigue driving icon displays " " to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ

The meter buzzer will not sound in all alarm conditions.



OMT18-2420

Fatigue driving can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the fatigue driving, short press enter button " ⏎ " to enter the fatigue driving setting.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 0.5 h on initial data. Short press enter button " ⏎ " to save and exit setting.

CAUTION

The fatigue driving time value can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF. System defaults to 1 h for fatigue driving reminder opening time.

● Driving information

Driving information setting screen includes the reset mode of average fuel consumption, maintenance mileage and trip mileage (For details, refer to "Information of the Information Display Area" in this section).

■ Information of information display area

Information display area is used to display total mileage, time, gear range (for AT models), integrated display information, average fuel consumption, instantaneous fuel consumption, driving mileage, trip mileage, door open status, reversing radar, upshift/downshift, maintenance indicator, graphic alarm information.

● Total mileage



OMT18-2430

Display total mileage of the vehicle.

The displayed range of the total mileage is 0 ~ 999,999 km, it will always display 999,999 km if beyonds the range.

● Driving mileage



OMT18-2440

Display driving mileage of the vehicle.

The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel. If only a small amount of fuel is added to the fuel tank, the display may not be updated.

READ

Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

● Average fuel consumption



OMT18-2450

Display average fuel consumption of the vehicle.

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, meter displays current value. Displayed data will be updated approximately every 10 s.

READ

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.



OMT18-2460

Average fuel consumption is reset to recalculate the average fuel consumption.

Average fuel consumption reset can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. Select driving information, short press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the average fuel consumption reset screen.
3. On the average fuel consumption reset screen, long press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

● Instantaneous fuel consumption



OMT18-2470

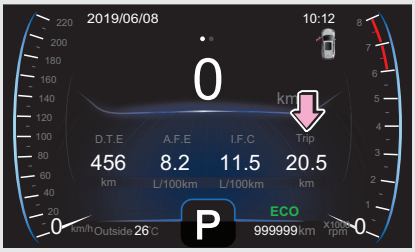
Display the instantaneous fuel consumption of this vehicle.

After starting the engine and accelerating, the instantaneous fuel consumption of engine is extremely high. It is normal.

READ

Instantaneous fuel consumption value is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

● Trip mileage

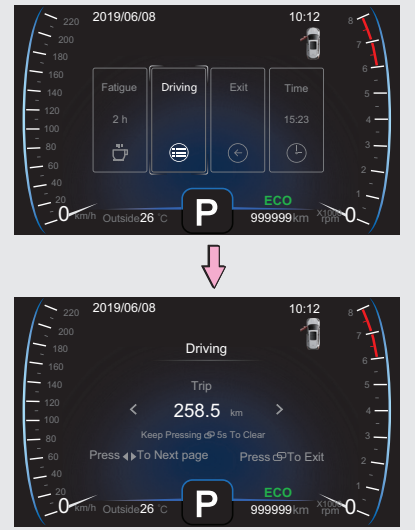


OMT18-2480

Display the trip mileage of this vehicle.

It can be used to calculate distance between two locations after trip mileage is reset.

Trip mileage display range is 0 ~ 9999.9 km. When it exceeds 9999.9 km, it will be reset and recalculated.

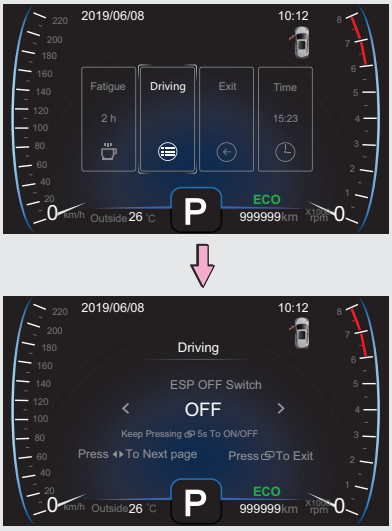


OMT18-2490

Trip mileage reset can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. Select driving information, short press enter button " ▭ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the trip mileage reset screen.
3. On the trip mileage reset screen, long press enter button " ▭ " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

● ESP function



OMT18-2491

ESP can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. Select driving information, short press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen.
3. On the ESP function screen, long press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons for 5 s to switch between ON/OFF.

● Theme setting



OMT18-2500

Theme can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. Select theme setting option, short press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting.
2. Short press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch the theme.
3. After setting is complete, short press enter button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to exit setting.

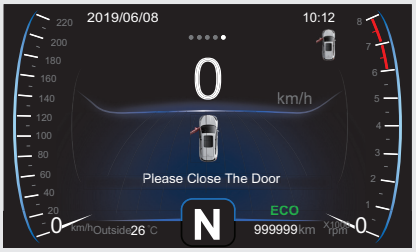
● Gear range display



OMT18-2520

Display the currently selected gear range information (display the current gear range in manual mode).

● Door status display



OMT18-2530

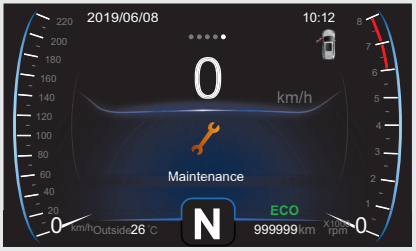
Indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

When speed is less than 3 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on; When speed is 3 km/h or higher, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with any door open or not fully closed to prevent the passenger from being thrown out due to sudden open of door, resulting in serious injury or death.

● Maintenance reminder



OMT18-2540

It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

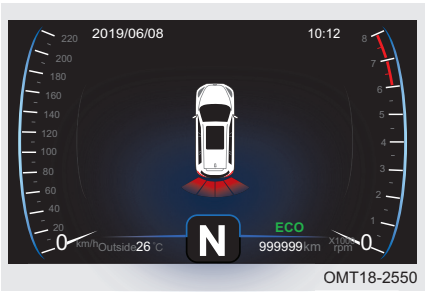
When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage. When it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

After resetting the maintenance mileage, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals. When it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

READ

The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power cut-off.

● Reversing radar information



OMT18-2550

When the engine is started and shift the shift lever to R, reversing radar information will be displayed on the information display area (For details, refer to "4-16. Reversing Radar System").

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch) (If Equipped)

Instrument Cluster



OMT18-2505

1 Fuel gauge
2 Speedometer
3 Warning light and indicator light
4 Information display area
5 Tachometer
6 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Speedometer



OMT18-2506

Speedometer uses digital to indicate current vehicle speed (Unit: km/h).

⚠ CAUTION

Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to 9-2.Vehicle Specifications), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer



OMT18-2511

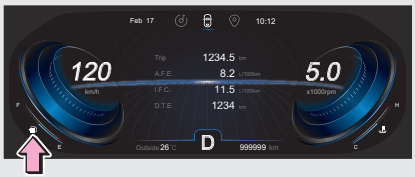
Tachometer uses digital to indicate current engine speed (Unit: x1000 rpm).

Allowable maximum engine speed range is 6000-8000 rpm after break-in period of engine. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
- Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge



OMT18-2512

Fuel gauge is used to indicate current amount of remaining fuel in the fuel tank.

Fuel tank capacity: 51 L

When fuel gauge indicates near E or the low fuel level warning light comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

To get an accurate fuel gauge reading, stop the vehicle on level ground and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode, observe the fuel gauge display to judge the current remaining fuel.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



OMT18-2513

When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON mode, it indicates current engine coolant temperature.

- At C or approaching C (low temperature range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is in C or near C area, it indicate that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be too large.

After engine is started, it may stay in this range for a short time. If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in this temperature range for a long time, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

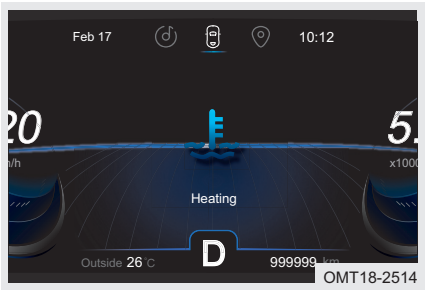
- At H or approaching H (overheating range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge indication approaches H range or high coolant temperature warning light comes on, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive the vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off ENGINE START STOP switch after idling for several minutes. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

WARNING

Never open the coolant reservoir cap if the engine is hot. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

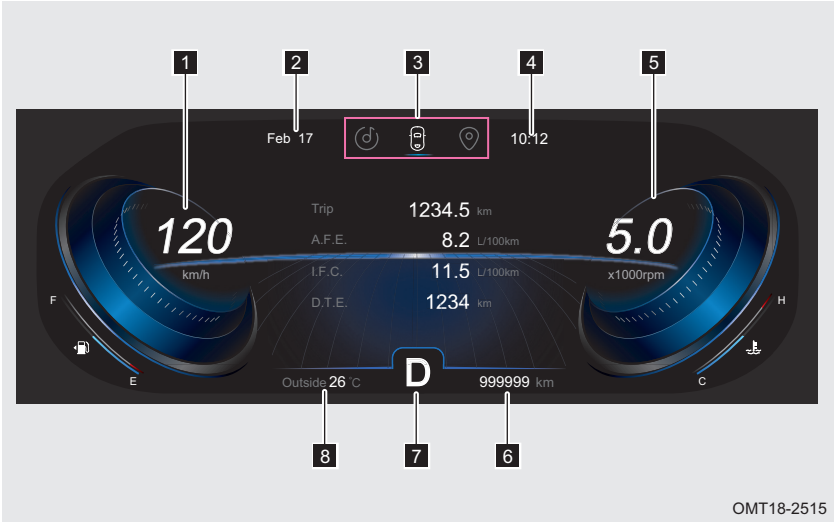
Engine Warming Up Function



Start engine, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue coolant temperature indicator will come on, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently.

After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed oninformation display area and blue indicator will go off, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Information Display Area Overview

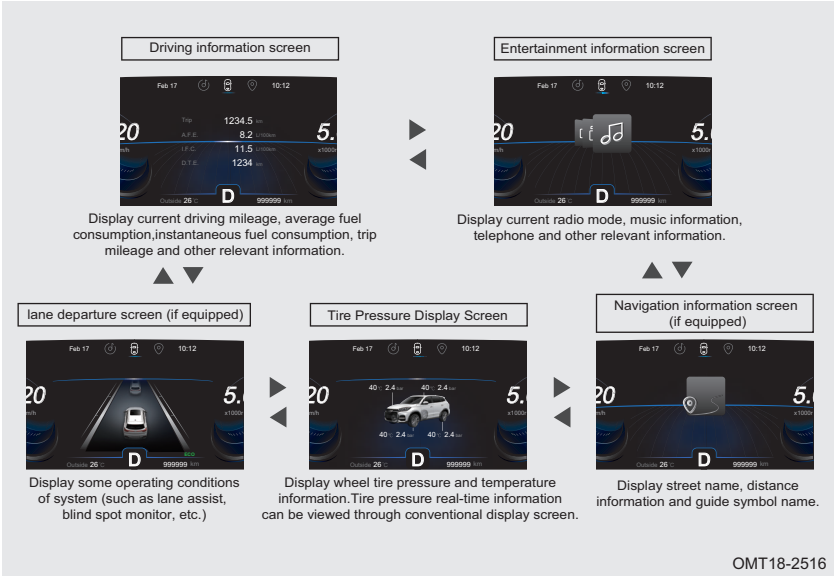


1 Speedometer
2 Data display
3 Navigation column
4 Time display
5 Tachometer
6 Total mileage
7 Gear range information
8 Outside temperature

■ Conventional display and setting screen operation

● Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to cycle the following screens.



● Setting screen

The setting screen includes the following screens. In the conventional display screen, dial down/short press button OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting screen, select the left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " to switch to the setting menu, dial down/short press button OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons again to enter the setting.

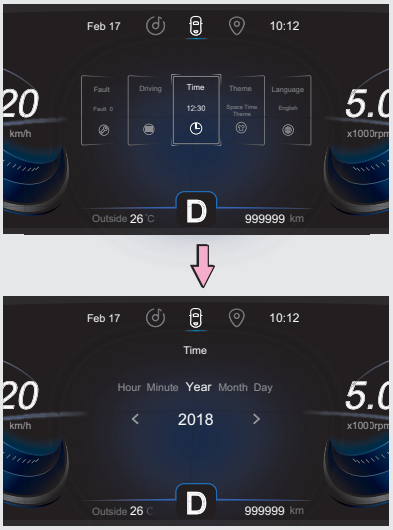


READ

Information screens are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Setting Screen

● Time setting



OMT18-2518

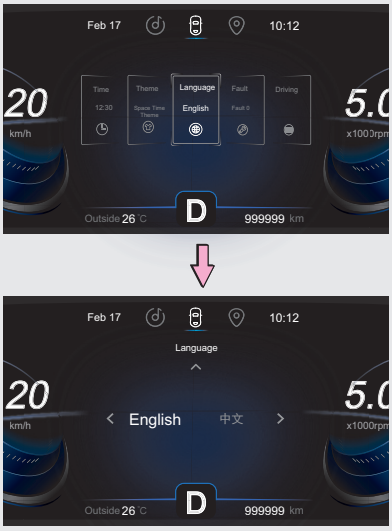
Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to time setting. Dial down/ short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter time setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust date and time. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

READ

Time can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).

● Language setting



OMT18-2519

Language can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to language setting. Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter language setting screen;
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch languages between Chinese and English. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ

Language can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).

● Fault inquiry



OMT18-2507

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen (For example: "No fault currently") after the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned on.



OMT18-2521

Fault inquiry can be performed by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fault inquiry. Dial down / short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fault inquiry screen.
2. If there are multiple abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the central area of information display area. Operate left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

⚠ CAUTION
If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

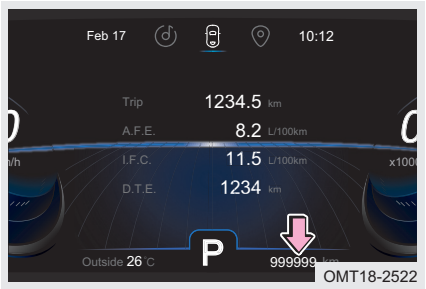
● Driving information

Driving information setting screen includes the reset mode of average fuel consumption, maintenance mileage and trip mileage. More details, refer to "Information on information display area" in this section.

■ Information on information display area

The information display area is used to display the total mileage, time, gear position (vehicle with automatic transmission), integrated display information, average fuel consumption, instantaneous fuel consumption, driving mileage, trip mileage, door open, reversing radar, upshift/downshift, maintenance indicator, graphic alarm information.

● Total mileage

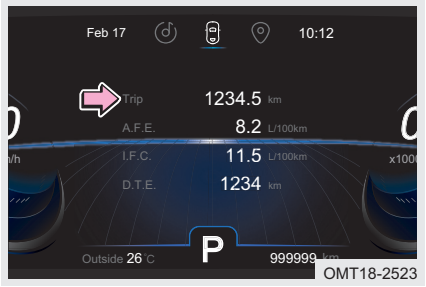


OMT18-2522

Display the total mileage of the vehicle.

The displayed range of the total mileage is 0~999,999 km, It remains 999999 km if beyond the range.

● Trip mileage

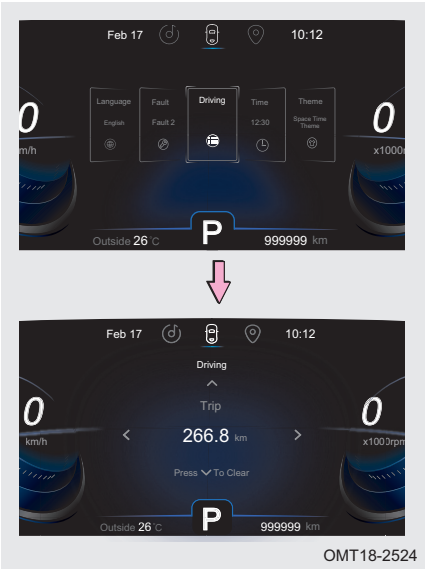


OMT18-2523

Display trip mileage of the vehicle.

It can be used to calculate distance between two locations after trip mileage is reset.

The displayed range of trip mileage is 0 ~ 9999.9 km, It will return to zero and restart calculation if exceeds 9999.9 km.

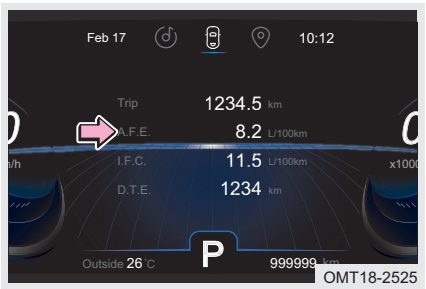


OMT18-2524

Trip mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select trip mileage screen. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter trip mileage screen.
3. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

● Average fuel consumption



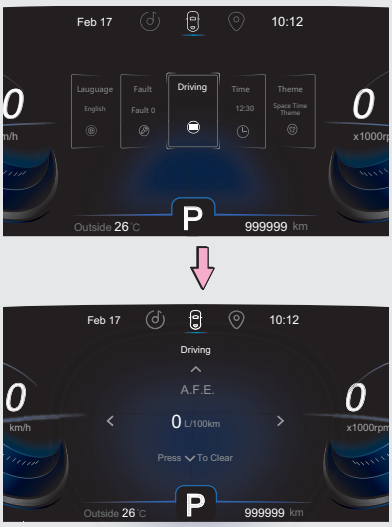
OMT18-2525

Display average fuel consumption of the vehicle.

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, the meter displays current value. Displayed data will be updated approximately every 10 s.

READ

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

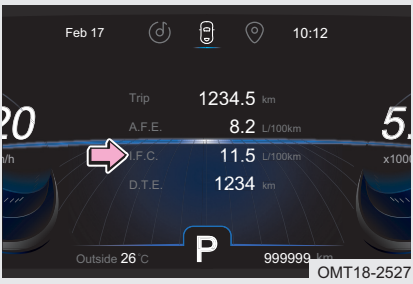


OMT18-2526

Average fuel consumption can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select average fuel consumption screen. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter average fuel consumption screen;
3. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

● Instantaneous fuel consumption



OMT18-2527

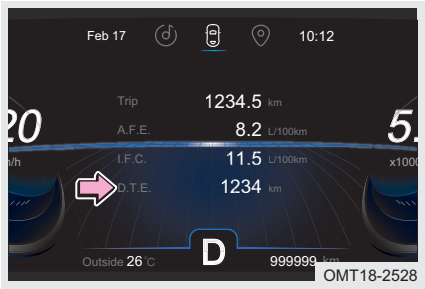
Display instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle.

After starting the engine and accelerating, the instantaneous fuel consumption of engine is extremely high. It is a normal phenomenon.

READ

Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

● Driving mileage



OMT18-2528

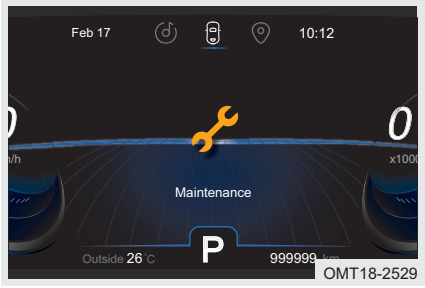
Display driving mileage of the vehicle.

The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel. If only a small amount of fuel is added to the fuel tank, the display may not be updated.

READ

Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

● Maintenance mileage



OMT18-2529

It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage. When it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator comes on information display area.

After resetting the maintenance mileage, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals. When it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.



OMT18-2508

Maintenance mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information.Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select maintenance mileage screen. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter maintenance mileage screen.
3. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to reset. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ

The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power off.

● Overspeed alarm (if equipped)



OMT18-2531

When vehicle speed reaches the set value, driving information display screen will display the overspeed indication value "120" and alarm buzzer will sound (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon), the speed value turns red at the same time. Alarm icon will go off only when vehicle speed is lower than the set value by -5 km/h. If vehicle speed reaches the set value again, alarm will be triggered again.

READ

- The audio head unit buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.
- The overspeed alarm function will not available when speed limit assist is turned on.



OMT18-2532

The speed limit can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information.Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select overspeed alarm screen. Dial down OK button "OK" to enter the overspeed alarm screen.
3. Short press left button " ◀ " / right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/ increase by 5 km/h on initial data. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting screen.
4. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off overspeed alarm. After that, dial up OK button "OK" , steering wheel combination buttons to turn on overspeed alarm and set the speed limit value.

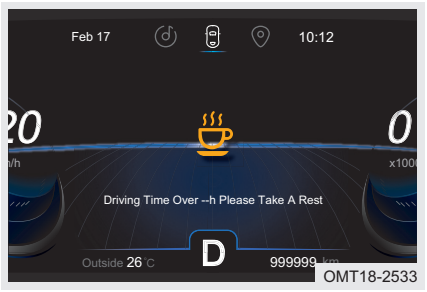
READ

- The speed limit changes by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

- Fatigue driving



OMT18-2533

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving time exceeds X, take a rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 second and fatigue driving icon displays " " to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ

The audio head unit buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT18-2534

Fatigue driving can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select fatigue driving screen. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fatigue driving screen.
3. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/increase the time by 0.5 h, short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.
4. Dial down OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off fatigue driving. After that, dial up OK button "OK" , of steering wheel combination buttons to turn on fatigue driving and set the fatigue driving time.

READ

The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF.

● ESP function (Electronic Stability Program)



OMT18-2535

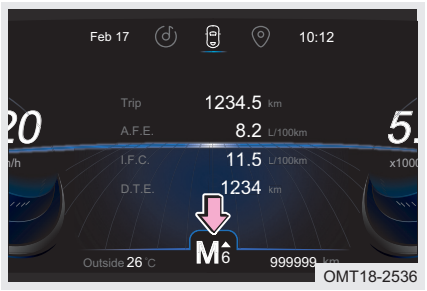
ESP function can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

1. On setting screen, press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen.
2. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select ESP function screen. Dial down OK button "OK" to enter ESP function screen.
3. Short press left button " ◀ " /right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn ESP function ON/OFF. Short press OK button "OK" of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ

For details of ESP function, refer to 4-6. Electronic Stability Program (ESP).

● Shifting prompt (manual mode)



OMT18-2536

Display the shifting prompt signal.

On-board computer displays arrow and target gear range according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shifting operation:

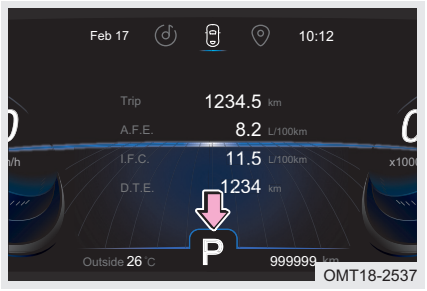
"▲" : Prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

"▼" : Prompts you to perform an downshift operation.

READ

The up-shifting and down-shifting information is for reference only. Always perform up-shifting or down-shifting operation according to actual situations.

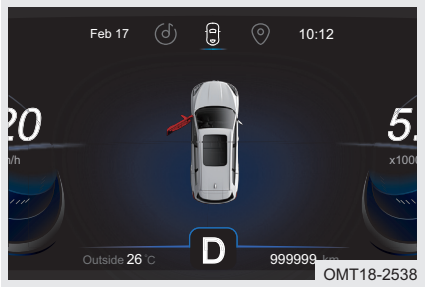
● Gear range display



OMT18-2537

Display the currently selected gear range information (it is the current gear range in manual mode).

● Doors status display



OMT18-2538

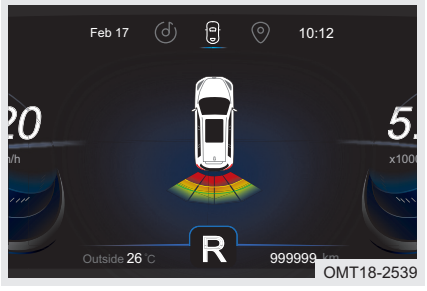
It is used to indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

When vehicle speed is $<$ 3 km/h with a door open, the audio head unit buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door icon will turn on; When speed is $\geqslant$ 3 km/h, the audio head unit buzzer will sound and the corresponding door icon will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with any door open or not fully closed to prevent the passenger from being thrown out due to sudden open of door, resulting in serious injury or death.

● Reversing radar information



OMT18-2539

After engine starts, if move shift lever to R, information display area displays reversing radar information (for details, refer to 4-16. Reversing Radar System (if equipped)).

2-5. Indicators and Malfunction Indicators

Indicators and Malfunction Indicators

The operation indicator is used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system and the corresponding operation indicator will come on.

Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning, the corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.

When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating that system is performing self-check. If a malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the engine, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Daytime Running Indicator



When the high beam lights are turned on or when the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.

Position Light Indicator



When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.

Turning Signal Indicator



When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes.

When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.

High Beam Indicator



When the high beam lights are turned on or when the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.

Rear Fog Indicator



When rear fog lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.

Front Seat Belt Indicator



When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, if the driver seat belt is not fastened or not fastened firmly, the indicator will flash continuously. When vehicle speed is 25 km/h or higher, if front passenger seat is occupied, and the seat belt is not fastened or not fastened firmly, the buzzer will sound and alarm icon will flash synchronously to inform driver to fasten the seat belt (For details, refer to "3-8. Seat Belt").

Rear Seat Belt Indicator (If Equipped)



When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, this indicator remains on in red, and illuminates in green after the seat belt is fastened, to reminder driver to fasten the seat belt (For details, refer to "3-8. Seat Belt").

Brake System Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that the brake fluid level is low or the brake system is faulty. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Electrical Parking Indicator



The indicator light is used to indicate that the vehicle is in operating condition of electrical parking currently. The indicator flashing during dynamic parking brake is normal and there is no need to handle. If it flashes in other situations, it indicates that there may be a malfunction in the system, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Electrical Parking Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that electrical parking is faulty. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Auto Hold Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in the operating conditions of auto hold. For details, refer to "4-5. Brake System".

Anti-lock Brake System Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is faulty. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) malfunction indicator comes on, the vehicle can still carry out conventional braking (no ABS function), always drive carefully and avoid driving at a high speed, and please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Hill Descent Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent is operating currently.

Hill Descent Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent is malfunctioning, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ESP Indicator



This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle's ESP system is operating currently.

This indicator is always on to alert the driver that ESP system is faulty. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ESP system malfunction indicator comes on, the vehicle can still carry out conventional braking (no ESP function), always drive carefully and avoid driving at a high speed.

ESP OFF Indicator



When ESP function is turned off, ESP OFF indicator will come on, indicating that ESP system is in disabled condition.

Charging System Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate the operating condition of charging system. If this indicator does not come on when engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, or comes on after engine starts, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

High Coolant Temperature Warning Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate the situation that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive the vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn off engine start stop switch after idling for several minutes. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Low Fuel Level Warning Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that the vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

Airbag Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that airbag system is faulty. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate that tire pressure is improper. Please check if tire pressure is too low/high or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is proper, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Electric Power Steering Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that electric power steering system is faulty. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

The electric power steering system malfunction indicator comes on, the vehicle can still carry out conventional steering, always drive carefully and avoid driving at a high speed.

Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Indicator



This indicator is used to indicate that engine oil pressure is low. Drive the vehicle to a safe area and stop, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

EPC Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that the engine system is faulty. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Engine Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that the engine is faulty. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Transmission Malfunction Indicator



This indicator is used to alert the driver that the transmission system is faulty. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

OPERATION INSTRUCTIONS

3-1. Smart Key
- Smart Key 78
- Mechanical Key 79
- Replacing Smart Key Battery 79
- Keyless Entry 81
- Keyless Entry (If Equipped) 84

3-2. Anti-Theft System
- Anti-Theft System 87
- Vehicle Fortifying 88
- Smart Bracelet Key (If Equipped) 90

3-3. Remote Control System (If Equipped)
- Starting Vehicle Remotely 95

3-4. Door Locks
- Door Lock Switch 96

3-5. Horn
- Horn 97
- Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 98

3-6. Adjusting Steering Wheel
- Adjusting Steering Wheel 99

3-7. Seat
- Front Seats 100
- Second Row Seats (5-seat) 104
- Second Row Seats (7-seat) 105
- Third Row Seat (7-seat, Folding Seats) 107
- Head Restraints 108

3-8. Seat Belts
- Seat Belts 109
- Seat Belt Pretensioner 112

3-9. Child Restraint Systems
- Safety Instruction for Using Child Restraint System ...115
- Child Restraint System Group 117
- ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 118
- TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 120
- Child Restraint System Installation 121

3-10. Airbag (SRS)
- Airbag (SRS) 125
- Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag ...127

3-11. Rear View Mirror
- Inside Rear View Mirror 132
- Outside Rear View Mirror 133

3-12. Wiper and Washer System
- Wiper Combination Switch 136
- Front Washer Operation Instructions 137
- Rear Wiper Operation Instructions 137
- Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 138

3-13. Vehicle Light
- Headlight Combination Switch 139
- Light Fogging Instructions 145

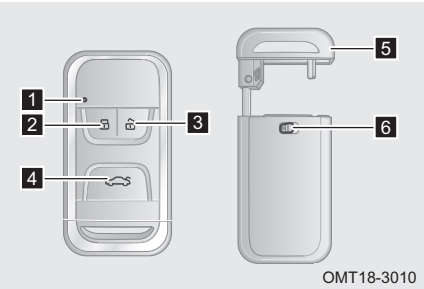
3-14. Windows
- Power Windows 146
- Window Remote Control Function (if equipped) 148
- Window Jam Protection Function (if equipped) 149

3-15. Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A) 151
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B) 152
Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If equipped) 153
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 154
3-16. Hood
Hood 154
3-17. Back Door
Back Door 155
3-18. Fuel Tank Cap
Fuel Tank Cap 160

3-1. Smart Key

Smart Key

Smart key is used to unlock/lock doors remotely and open back door. The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to unlock/lock doors in emergency.



1 Indicator light
2 Lock button
3 Unlock button
4 Back door opener button
5 Mechanical key
6 Mechanical key release button

Remote control function is designed to unlock/lock doors within about 20 m (no blind area) of the vehicle. The followings may affect operation when smart key cannot operate properly:

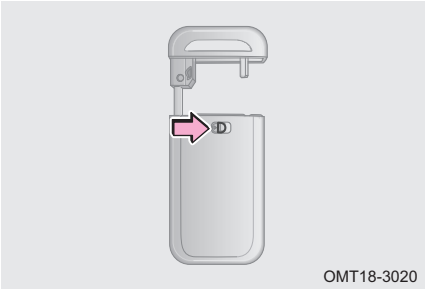
- When there are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
- The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
- When smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
- When smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
- When near a portable radio or other wireless communication devices with similar frequency to vehicle wireless remote controller.
- When near a TV tower, radio station, electric power plant, airport, railway station or other facility that generates strong radio waves.

⚠ CAUTION

- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be disturbed by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not change the transmission frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using it, do not interfere with legal wireless communications. In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

Mechanical Key

When smart key battery power is low or smart key does not operate properly, take out mechanical key to unlock/lock doors.



Push release button on backside of smart key to take mechanical key out. After using, return it to original place for easy-to-carry and anti-loss (For details, refer to "6-9. Door Mechanical Switch").

Replacing Smart Key Battery

■ Replacing smart key battery

If the following occurs, the key battery may be low or depleted:

- The remote control distance gradually decreases.
- Meter prompts "Smart key battery power is low".
- Remote control function does not work even without interference.
- When pressing any smart key button, indicator on the key is dim or does not come on.

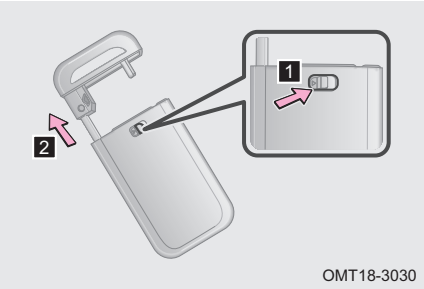
READ

Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

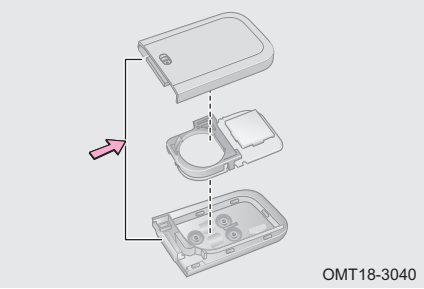
CAUTION

- Only use the battery type recommended by Chery.
- Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components.
- There are some difficulties when replacing key battery, so that, it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended that replace it at Chery authorized service station.

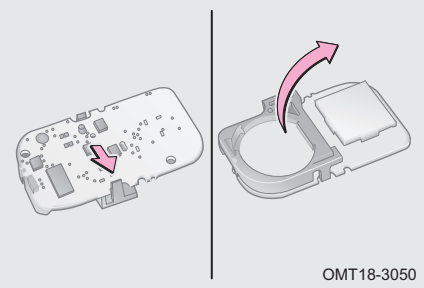
■ Replacing key battery according to steps below.



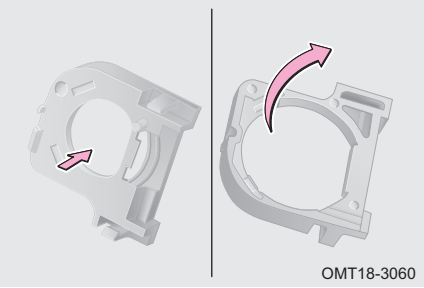
1. Push release button and take out mechanical key.



2. Pry off smart key cover using a flat-head screwdriver with the tip taped, and then remove circuit board.



3. Remove battery holder from circuit board.



4. Remove battery from holder and install a new one with positive (+) facing up.
5. Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal.
6. Press any smart key button to confirm that indicator comes on. After replacing the battery, check if the smart key works properly.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

If the smart key cannot operate properly, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

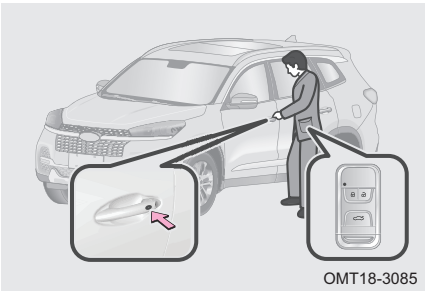
CAUTION

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery by oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.

Keyless Entry

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying smart key (without taking it out) on your person.

■ Locking and unlocking doors

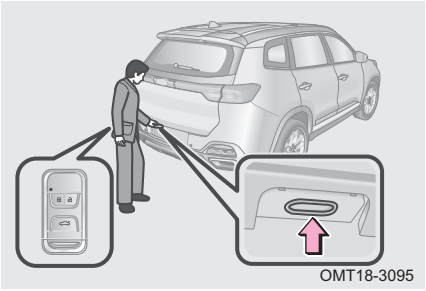

OMT18-3085

Press switch on door handle while carrying smart key on your person and approaching the vehicle, system automatically recognizes validity of the key. Once recognizing as being valid, doors can be locked and unlocked.

CAUTION

If smart key is left in vehicle, door handle switch will not work.

■ Opening back door



● When doors are unlocked:

Press back door opener switch simply to open back door.

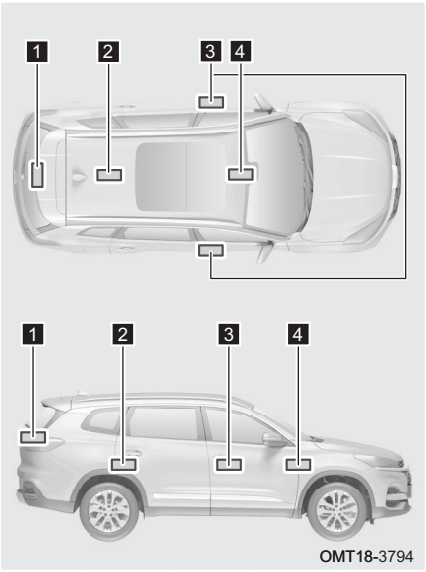
● When doors are locked:

When back door opener switch is disabled, approach the back of vehicle while carrying smart key and press back door opener switch to open back door.

READ

For vehicle with power back door, detailed operation method to open and close back door using back door opener switch, refer to "3-17. Back Door".

■ Antenna location



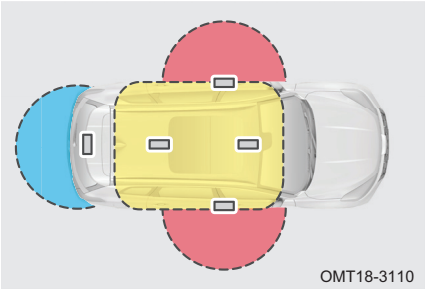
1 Luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna

2 Rear inner low-frequency antenna

3 Front door handle low-frequency antenna

4 Front inner low-frequency antenna

■ Effective range (areas within which smart key can be detected)



When starting or switching power mode

The system can be operated when smart key is inside the vehicle.

When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when smart key is within effective range of front door handle low-frequency antenna.

Opening back door

The system can be operated when smart key is within effective range of back door outer low-frequency antenna.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Door handle low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.2 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using microswitch to operate side doors or back door, ensure that distance between the smart key and door handle meets the requirement.

■ Notes for smart keyless entry function

In the following situations, the system may not operate properly even when smart key is within the effective range (detection areas):

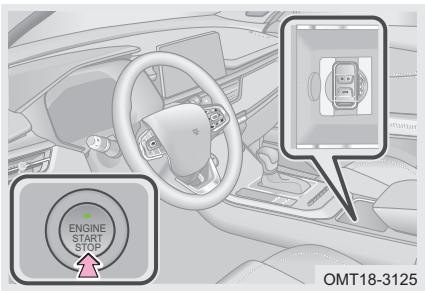
- When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
- Smart key is in luggage compartment.
- Check if the meter prompts "ATTENTION SMART KEY IN VEHICLE".
- Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources.

As long as smart key is within the effective range, any one can lock or unlock vehicle.

■ Alarm hint

More details, refer to "Vehicle Fortifying" in this section.

■ Engine start stop

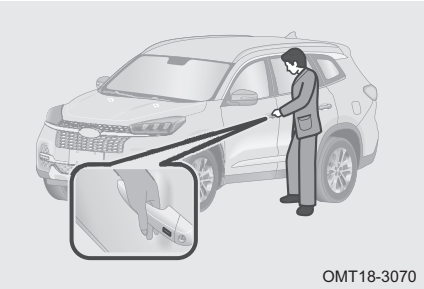


When smart key is in vehicle and start conditions are met (engine start stop switch indicator becomes green), engine start stop function is available. More details, refer to "4-1. Engine Start Stop Switch".

Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

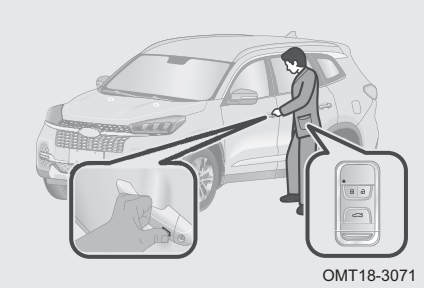
The following operations can be performed simply by carrying smart key (without taking it out).

■ Unlocking doors


OMT18-3070

- Touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock.
- Approach to vehicle when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically sense and unlock.

■ Locking doors


OMT18-3071

- Touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically lock.
- Leave vehicle when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically sense and lock.

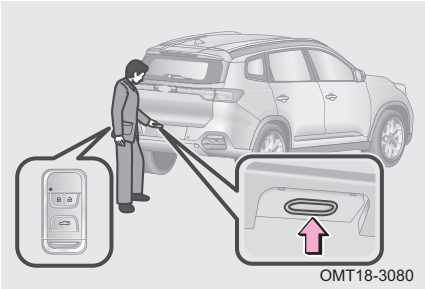
READ

- Smart key sensing unlock/lock need to be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").
- Sensing unlock/lock function is turned off after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restart the engine to restore sensing unlock/lock function.

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key together with computer cordless mouse, phone, etc. doing so may not sense and unlock/lock.
- Smart key sensing lock function is only operated when engine start stop switch is switched to OFF mode, all doors and back door are completely closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing all doors and back door, smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If carry the smart key away from vehicle approximately 2.5 m, turn signal lights are not flash and horn sound is not heard (successful fortifying prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid misoperation or unsatisfied condition, resulting in unlocked vehicle.
- After smart key sensing active lock is activated, if smart key is always near the vehicle, vehicle will lock automatically more than 15 minutes, if the smart key still is in there for another 15 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily turned off, it can be only activated after opening any door or back door and then closing all doors and back door.

■ Opening back door

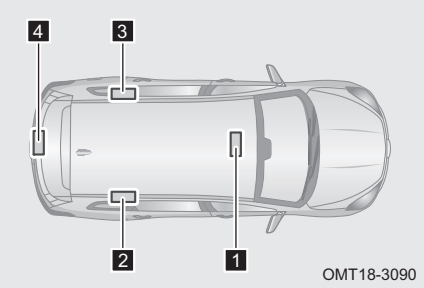

OMT18-3080

- Long press back door opening button on smart key, turn signal lights come on, back door is opened.
- With central lock unlocked, press back door opening switch, turn signal lights will come on and back door will be opened.
- With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key and press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and back door will be opened.

READ

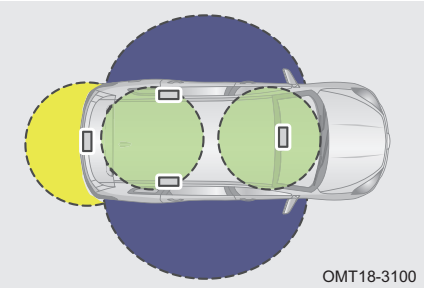
For details about back door opening, refer to "3-17. Back Door".

■ Antenna location



1 Front inner low-frequency antenna
2 Rear right door high-performance low-frequency antenna
3 Rear left door high-performance low-frequency antenna
4 Luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna

■ Detection areas of smart key



area
When smart key is within range of front low-frequency antenna in vehicle, start or switch power mode.

area
When smart key is within effective range of door high-performance low-frequency antenna, unlock/lock doors.

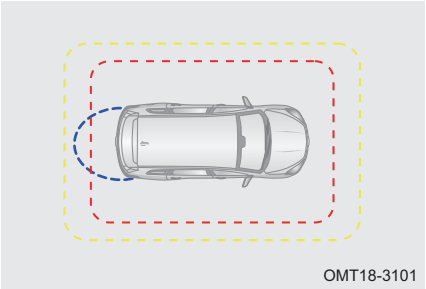
area
Back door can be opened when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna.

READ
Low-frequency antenna can detect effective areas within about 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry and operating engine start stop switch, the distance between smart key and low-frequency antenna must be ensured.

In the following situations, the system may not operate properly even when smart key is within the effective range (detection areas):

- Smart key is in luggage compartment.
- When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
- Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources.

■ Automatic sensing area



Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle when carrying smart key, doors automatically sense and lock.

Approach to unlocking area

Approach to the vehicle when carrying smart key, doors automatically sense and unlock.

Smart opening of back door area

Approach to the vehicle when carrying smart key, doors cannot automatically sense and unlock/lock.

■ Alarm hint

For details, refer to "Vehicle Fortifying" in this section.

3-2. Anti-Theft System

Anti-Theft System

Your vehicle is equipped with two anti-theft systems: Engine immobilizer system and vehicle anti-theft system.

■ Engine immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine anti-theft module, the built-in chip will stop engine from starting.

Conditions may cause system malfunction:

- Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
- Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not match the key by yourself, this may affect the normal operation of system.
- Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system. Otherwise, system may not operate properly.
- If engine cannot start but starter can operate normally, it may not operate properly due to anti-theft system disturbances (For details, refer to "6-7. If Your Vehicle Will not Start Normally").

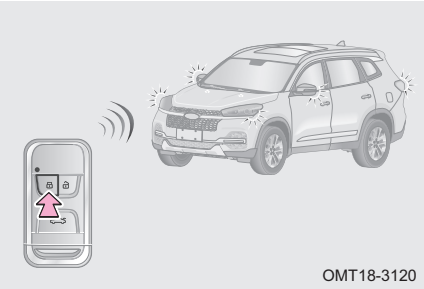
■ Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is in fortifying mode and invalid entry is detected, system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an invalid opening state (For details, refer to "Vehicle Fortifying" in this section).

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system and vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and fortified successfully.

Vehicle Fortifying

■ Fortifying operation



● Fortifying mode

Engine start stop switch is turned to OFF mode, four doors and back door are closed.

Press the lock button on smart key or microswitch to lock doors. In this case, vehicle anti-theft system is enabled, and whole vehicle enters fortifying state.

● Successful fortifying prompt

Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

● Unsuccessful fortifying mode

Engine start stop switch is not turned to OFF mode, four doors or back door is not closed, vehicle cannot enter fortifying state.

● Unsuccessful fortifying prompt

Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

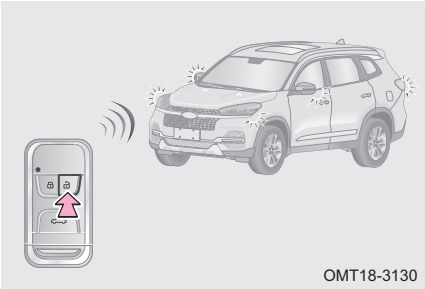
> READ
>
> Fortifying prompt is set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> ● Engine start stop switch is not turned to OFF mode, vehicle fortifying cannot be set.
>
> ● If four side doors are closed and back door is not closed completely, the door central lock will lock once and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.
>
> ● If back door is closed and any door is not closed, the door central lock will lock and then unlock and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.

■ Secondary fortifying mode

After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.

■ Fortifying deactivation mode



● Fortifying deactivation mode

Press unlock button on smart key directly or approach vehicle with key on person (no need to take out the key), press door handle switch, then, system automatically recognizes validity of the key and unlock vehicle.

● Successful deactivation prompt

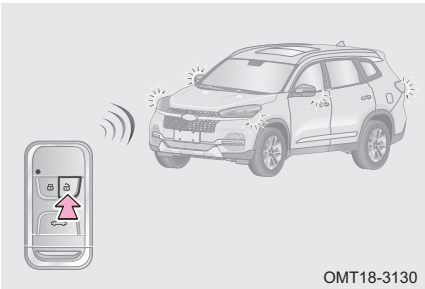
Turn signal lights flash twice.

READ

- When vehicle anti-theft system is in anti-theft state, if pressing unlock button on smart key or vehicle starts successfully, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated.
- After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if any of four doors and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary fortifying mode.

■ Alarm mode

When the vehicle is in fortifying state and invalid entry is detected (for example: any door or back door is opened invalidly, alarm will be activated), the vehicle will enter alarm state.



● Alarm mode:

When invalid entry is detected, the vehicle enters cyclic alarm mode, anti-theft horn sounds and turn signal lights flash.

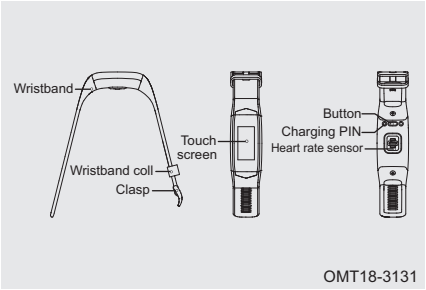
● Deactivating alarm:

When the vehicle is in alarm mode, press unlock button on smart key, or turn engine start stop switch to ON mode to deactivate alarm.

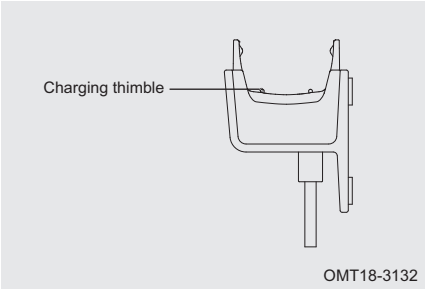
READ

- For single alarm source, maximum 3 alarm cycles will be activated;
- For more than one alarm sources, maximum 8 alarm cycles will be activated (sound-light alarm will stop after 8 cycles).

Smart Bracelet Key (If Equipped)



Smart bracelet key.



Smart bracelet charging base.

■ APP Downloading and Binding



Step 1: APP downloading;

Scan the QR code on the left, or search for the mobile app "Chery Wear" in the APP Store/Google Play.

Step 2: Binding of bracelet with phone;

Turn on the "Chery Wear" APP, register/log in, switch to the [Device] list and select [MyChery] to complete the pairing and binding with the bracelet.

READ

- Make sure the Bluetooth of your phone is switched on. During the connection, place the bracelet close to the phone. One smart bracelet can only be connected to one phone.
- Turn on the position permission of "Chery Wear", and the GPS of mobilephone, if your mobilephone is Android 6.0 and above system.

Step 3: APP settings.

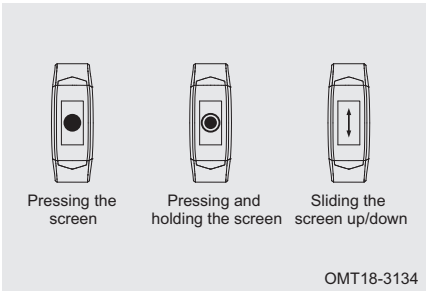
To ensure that the Bluetooth connection between the bracelet and the phone is stable and that the bracelet can receive the notifications for phone message push stably, please set the message notification permission of "Chery Wear" APP on.

The setting method is as follows: Enter the "Mine" list of APP, select the "User Help" menu, select "Phone Setting Method" to identify the setting method suitable for the brand of your phone, and set your phone according to the setting procedure.

■ Use

The bracelet, once bound successfully, can provide such functions as time display, sports data recording, step counting, calorie consumption recording, sleep monitoring, heart rate monitoring, and message reminder.

Smart bracelet supports various operation modes including: rotating wrist to display; sliding the screen up and down to switch the classified modules; pressing the screen to switch the information display; pressing and holding to select; bottom button, etc.



To know the operation methods of bracelet functions, visit "How to operate Smart Bracelet" in "Chery Wear" APP.

■ Main Functions of Bracelet

<table>
<tr><th>Function</th><th>Description</th><th>Function</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Smart key</td><td>Passive start (PEPS)</td><td rowspan="6">Other</td><td>Time/Date/Battery Display</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remote car locking/unlocking</td><td>Motion display</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remote trunk opening</td><td>Key/Touch operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>Window remote control</td><td>Finding the phone</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remote engine start(if configured)</td><td>3ATM waterproofness</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remote control car searching (if configured)</td><td>OTA upgrade</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Sports and health</td><td>Automatic step record</td><td rowspan="6">Message reminder</td><td>Message reminder (Telephone /SMS/ WeChat, etc.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sports mileage record</td><td>Reminder (Alarm clock/ Sedentary /Sports compliance/Bluetooth off)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calorie consumption record</td><td>Message details browsing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sports modes (outdoor, indoor, cycling)</td><td>Alarm clock by vibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sleep monitoring</td><td>Schedule reminder</td></tr>
<tr><td>Heart rate monitoring (static, dynamic)</td><td>Low battery reminder</td></tr>
<tr><td>Low power mode</td><td colspan="3">When the battery capacity is lower than 10%, the general functions except for PEPS of the bracelet will be disabled. Please charge the bracelet as soon as possible.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Physical button</td><td colspan="3">If the bracelet crashes, press the physical button 7 seconds to restart forcibly.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">When the power of the bracelet drops to 10%, turn off the bracelet function and touchscreen RKE function, press the physical button of the bracelet to unlock/lock the vehicle within the range of the bracelet remote control.</td></tr>
</table>

■ Low Power Mode

When the battery capacity is lower than 20%, a low battery reminder will be given and the display will show "Please charge".

When the battery capacity drops to 10%, the bracelet will enter the low power mode. At this time, all functions except for PEPS are disabled.

Note: When the bracelet enters the low power mode, please charge it in time to avoid that the car cannot be locked after the bracelet battery is exhausted.

■ Charge

Plug the charging base into the power outlet (charging voltage 5V±0.25V, current ⩽ 500mA), and align the charging PIN on the bracelet with the charging thimble on the charging base for charging.

Note: When the bracelet indicates low battery, please charge it in time.

■ Notices

1. Avoid wearing the bracelet too tightly in daily use. Keep the contact area of the bracelet dry and regularly clean the bracelet with water. If any skin irritation symptom appears in the contact area, please remove the bracelet and consult a doctor.
2. After selecting to measure the heart rate on the bracelet, keep your wrist still during the measurement.
3. If your wrist is sweaty after sports, clean and dry your wrist and bracelet, and then wear it again.
4. Try to keep the heart rate monitoring window and the charging interface clean.
5. Prevent the bracelet from being exposed to extremely high/low temperature for a long term.

■ Waterproof Instructions

The waterproofness rating of smart bracelet is 3ATM.

Therefore, you can wear it in general daily occasions such as swimming, surfing, diving and snorkeling.

However, the following conditions may affect the waterproofness of the bracelet, and thus should be avoided during use:

1. Enter an environment of high temperature, high humidity and high pressure (e.g. sauna, hot spring, or professional diving) with bracelet on hand.
2. If you wear the bracelet on the beach, avoid direct contact with the sand on the beach. Pay attention to clean the main body with fresh water in time to avoid scratching the screen.
3. The touch screen of the bracelet does not support operation with water. Therefore, when the bracelet is wet, please dry the surface with a soft cloth at first.
4. Avoid dropping or otherwise impacting the bracelet.

■ Hazardous Substances

Part Name	Toxic or harmful substances or elements					
	Lead (Pb)	Mercury (Hg)	Cadmium (Cd)	Hexavalent chromium (Cr(VI))	Polybrominated biphenyl (PBB)	Polybrominated diphenyl ether (PBDE)
Main unit	X	O	O	O	O	O
Wristband	O	O	O	O	O	O
Battery	X	O	O	O	O	O
Charging base	O	O	O	O	O	O

This table is prepared in accordance with the provisions of SJ/T 11364.
O: Indicating that the content of the hazardous substance in all homogeneous materialsof the part is below the limit specified in GB/T 26572.
X: Indicating that the content of the hazardous substance in at least one certain homogeneous material of the part exceeds the limit specified in GB/T 26572 but there is no mature alternative available in the industry, and that the environmental requirements of the EU RoHS Directive are satisfied.

⚠ CAUTION

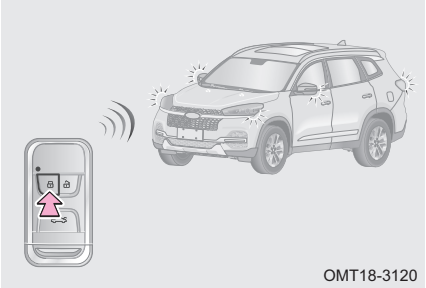
The indicated environment-friendly use period of the product refers to the safe period of time during which the harmful substances or elements contained in the product will not leak under normal use conditions.

OMT18-3135

Scanning QR code to view electronic instructions.

3-3. Remote Control System (If Equipped)

Starting Vehicle Remotely



- Starting vehicle remotely using smart key: When vehicle power mode is OFF, vehicle is locked and smart key is not in vehicle, press lock button on the smart key and hold for several seconds to start it remotely and air conditioning operates automatically at the same time. Shutting down vehicle remotely using smart key: The vehicle will automatically shut off after 10 minutes of remote start.

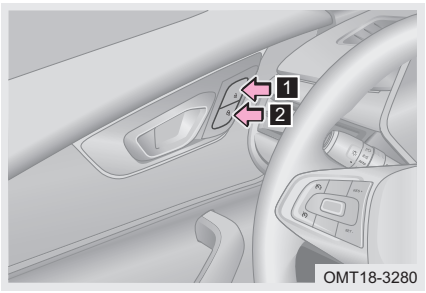
READ

- There is no one in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- After vehicle is started remotely, some function cannot be operated (such as headlight combination switch, wiper combination switch, audio function), depress brake pedal when carrying smart key, exit remote mode to restore normal operation.
- When vehicle is started remotely, it can only be unlocked, but cannot be locked.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key.
- When the vehicle is started remotely for 10 min, remote start is allowed successfully 2 times, if 2 chances are used, remote start can be started again after engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode.

3-4. Door Locks

Door Lock Switch

■ Unlocking /locking doors

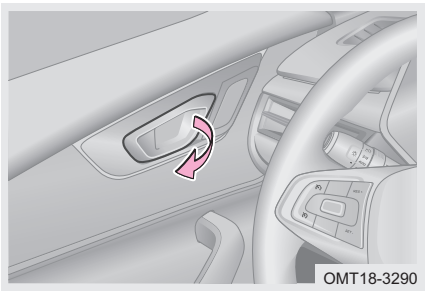


1 Unlock switch

2 Lock switch

In the vehicle, press unlock/lock switch to unlock/lock doors.

■ Opening doors using door inside handles

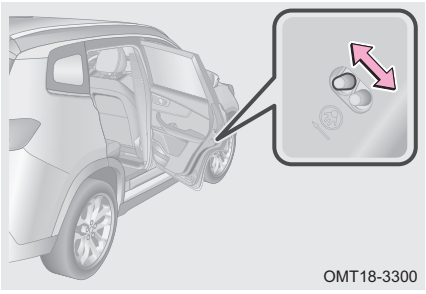


- When doors are unlocked, pull door inside handle simply to open door.
- When doors are locked, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the door, and pull it again to open the door.

READ

- If the doors are locked using mechanical key, vehicle anti-theft function cannot be enabled. Therefore, it is recommended to lock doors using smart key.
- After locking doors using smart key, if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered.

■ Rear door child-protection locks



The child-protection locks are located at inner side of rear doors.

Move lock lever upward and downward to unlock/lock the child-protection lock as shown in the illustration.

Lock: Push the lock lever to arrow direction.

Unlock: Pull the lock lever against arrow direction.

READ

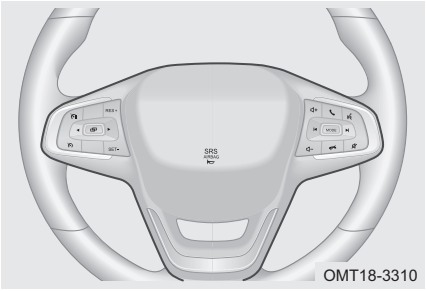
The rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the child-protection locks are set, it is recommended to use this function if there is any child in vehicle.

WARNING

- Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.
- When a child is seated in vehicle rear seat, always lock child-protection locks to prevent rear door being opened accidentally while driving.
- In case of a collision, if there is someone in vehicle and child-protection lock is locked, remember that, rear door can only be opened from outside.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury even death due to sharp temperature rise.

3-5. Horn

Horn



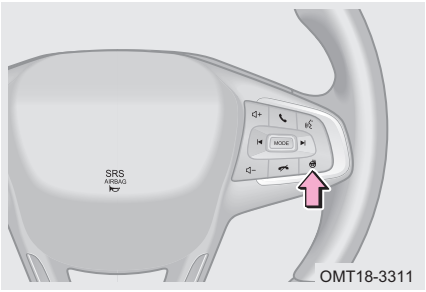
To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

- Do not sound horn near schools, hospitals, or in places such as residential areas.
- Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)

■ Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)



Press the switch to enable steering wheel heating function and indicator comes on at the same time. Press the switch again to cancel the function and the indicator turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

When the followings are met, the steering wheel heating function can be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

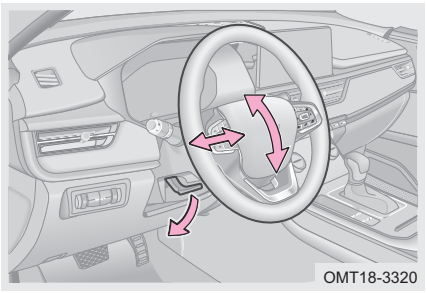
When any of the followings are met, the function will turn off after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering wheel is heated over 25 minutes.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.
- When temperature of steering wheel is over 52°C, steering wheel heating function turns off; After that, when temperature of steering wheel is below 50°C, the function recovers.

3-6. Adjusting Steering Wheel

Adjusting Steering Wheel

To drive safely and comfortably, you can adjust inclination angle of steering wheel.



Stop vehicle on a safe ground, turn off engine start stop switch:

1. Push down adjustment lever and release it;
2. Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;
3. Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;
4. Check if the steering wheel is shaking, repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

⚠ WARNING

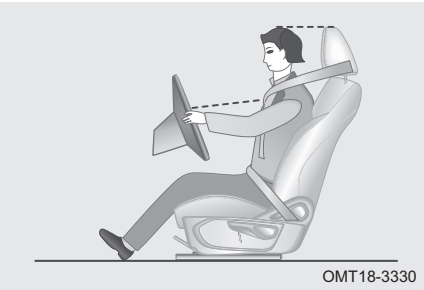
- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, doing so may cause driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- For safety, after adjusting steering wheel, always push adjustment lever to original position and try moving steering wheel upward and downward/ forward and backward to make sure that it is securely locked. Otherwise, steering wheel may move suddenly during driving, causing unnecessary injury and loss.

3-7. Seat

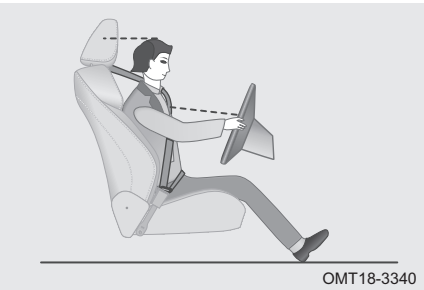
Front Seats

■ Correct sitting posture

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags are helpful to protect passengers. Using them fully will provide you with more protection. Please observe the followings:

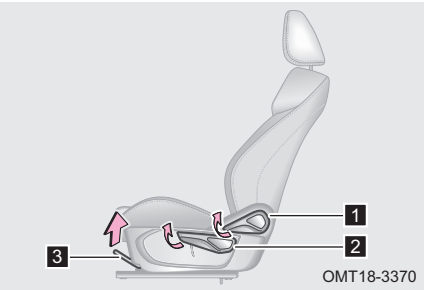

OMT18-3330

- When sitting, slightly inclines rearward (25° backward is proper) and well back on seatback.
- When sitting in front seat, never get too close to instrument panel. Hold the steering wheel with slightly curved arms during driving. The feet should also be bent slightly so that the pedal can be fully depressed.
- Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.


OMT18-3340

- The shoulder belt should be over the shoulder center and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should close to the hips but not stomach.

■ Adjusting seat manually (if equipped)



OMT18-3370

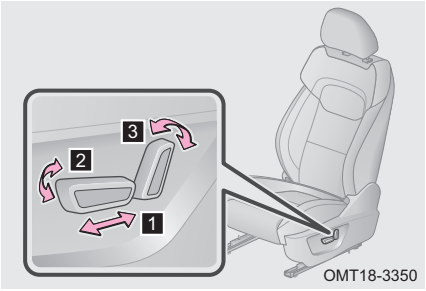
1 Adjusting seatback forward and backward

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body. Once reach desired angle, release the lever. After that, apply force backwards against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

2 Adjusting seat height (only driver side)
Pull up and push down seat adjustment lever to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seat position forward and backward
There is a grip under seat for adjusting forward and backward position of seat. Pull it up to adjust forward and backward position of seat. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, move the seat forwards and backwards to make sure that the seat is locked in position.

■ Adjusting power seat (if equipped)



OMT18-3350

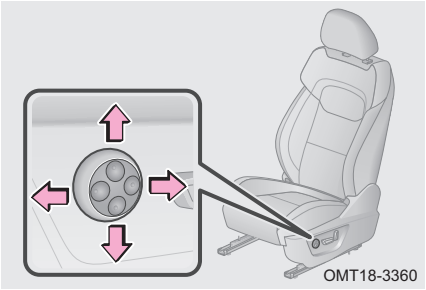
1 Adjusting seat position forward and backward.
Move button forward and backward parallelly to adjust seat position.

2 Adjusting seat height (if equipped)
Move front end of button upward and downward to adjust seat upward and downward.

3 Adjusting seatback angle
Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Seat lumbar support adjustment (if equipped)

Operate lumbar support button to adjust to make driver waist in a comfortable position, solving a series of problems caused by curling waist up in seat.


OMT18-3360

Press and hold " ⇧ " to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist simultaneously.

Press and hold " ⇩ " to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist simultaneously.

Press and hold " ⇦ " to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

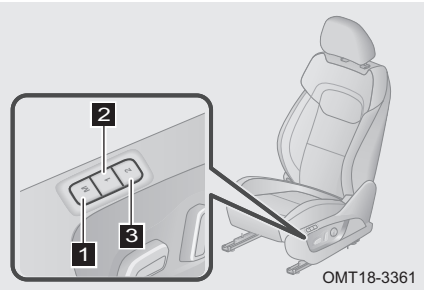
Press and hold " ⇨ " to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

READ
When adjusting up and down, back and forth by using lumbar support button, there is a certain limit position. When reaching the limit position, release the button in time.

WARNING

- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean your body against it to make sure that the seat is locked in position.
- Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will prevent the seat from moving.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a collision when the driver and the front passenger slightly incline backward and well back in their seats while sitting.

■ Seat memory function (if equipped)



Switch memory:

1 Seat memory setting switch

2 Seat memory position 1 switch

3 Seat memory position 2 switch

Press seat memory setting switch, immediately press the seat memory position 1 switch or seat memory position 2 switch after instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, the corresponding positions are stored to seat memory position 1 or seat memory position 2, instrument cluster indicates memory position has been completed at the same time.

Long press seat memory position 1 switch or seat memory position 2 switch until the seat operates to release the finger, seat will automatically move to the corresponding position.

Audio memory:

After adjusting the seat position, a dialog box will pop up by audio head unit, asking whether to save the current position to the common mode, leisure position or comfortable mode, and select one of the points to confirm the preservation.

When you need to recall seat memory position (current smart key ID), select common mode, leisure mode or comfortable mode on audio head unit setting screen. At the same time, correlate the outside rear view mirror memory function to the corresponding position.

READ

- The vehicle is equipped with two smart keys, which have two smart key IDs to unlock and identify ID source.
- If position memory and key binding is turned off, no dialog box will pop up from audio head unit after adjusting seats.

■ Easy seat access function (if equipped)

When turn ENGINE START STOP switch from ON to OFF and open driver door, driver seat goes backwards a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

When turn ENGINE START STOP switch from OFF to ACC, driver seat automatically moves forwards to seat memory function commonly used mode (current smart key ID).

Under remote control, open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance, depress the brake pedal, driver seat automatically moves forward to seat memory function commonly used mode (current smart key ID).

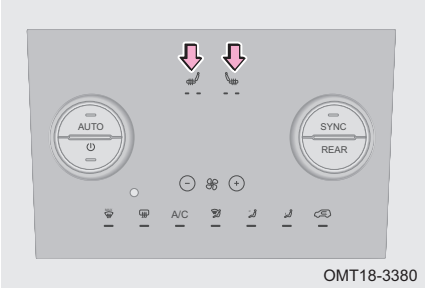
READ

- The vehicle is equipped with two smart keys, which have two smart key IDs to unlock and identify ID source.
- If seat memory function does not bind with commonly used mode (current smart key ID), easy seat access function moves forward to seat position before exiting the vehicle automatically.

WARNING

- When seat position memory and key binding/easy seat access function turns on, make sure no one gets caught. Otherwise, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of easy seat access function.
- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.

■ Seat heating function (if equipped)



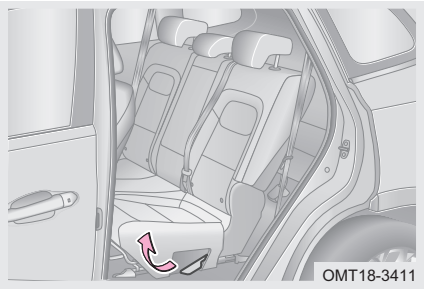
OMT18-3380

Driver seat electric heater switch/ front passenger electric heater switch

The first press is 2-level heating (2 indicators on). Press again to enable 1-level heating (1 indicator on). Press it the third time to turn off the function.

Second Row Seats (5-seat)

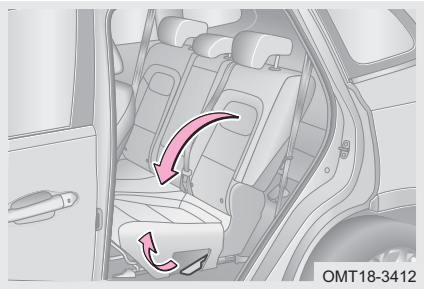
■ Adjusting seat position



Adjusting seatback forward and backward

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards, adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of body. After that, move the seatback forwards and backwards to make sure the seatback is locked in position.

■ Folding seatbacks (the right seat is folded in the same way)



Adjust height of seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and store middle armrest. Then pull the left seatback adjustment handle upward and put hands on seatback and slowly fold down.

READ

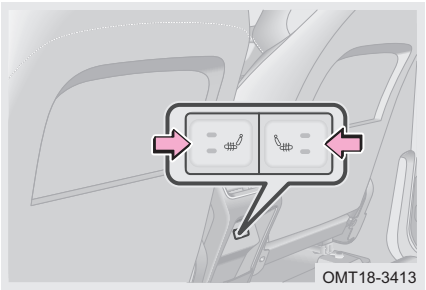
Folding the second row seatback can enlarge the luggage storage space (For details, refer to "Precautions for Luggage Storage" in this section).

WARNING

- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean your body against it to make sure that the seat is locked in position.
- When folding seat, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.
- Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will prevent the seat from moving.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.

■ Rear Seat Heater (If Equipped)

Heater button is located besides the rear air outlet.

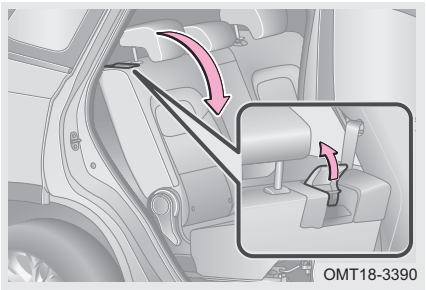


The heating function has two levels. When pressing, it works at high level (both upper and lower indicators come on).

Press the switch again to change to low level (lower indicator comes on). Press the button again to cancel heating (both indicators turn off).

Second Row Seats (7-seat)

■ Seat EASY ENTRY

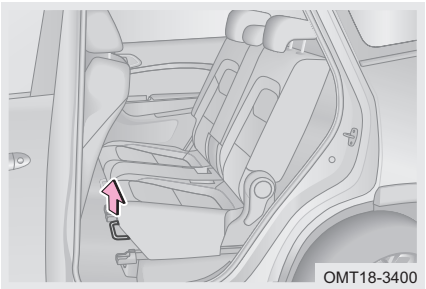


1. Pull EASY ENTRY operating handle on upper part of seatback;
2. Fold seatback of the second row and push seat to foremost position;
3. After entering and exiting the third row seat, slide the second row seat to rearmost position and pull seatback backward until a click sound is heard. Make sure that the seat is locked in proper position.

⚠ CAUTION

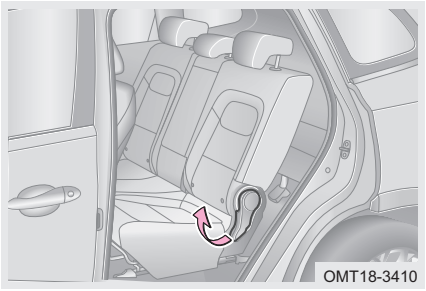
- Do not operate this function while vehicle is in motion.
- After operating EASY ENTRY function, always make sure that the seat is locked properly.

■ Adjusting seat position



Adjusting seat position forward and backward

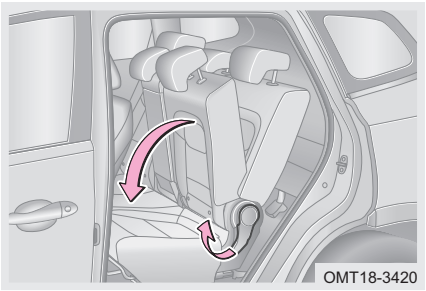
There is a grip under seat for adjusting forward and backward position of seat. Pull it up to adjust forward and backward position of seat. After adjusting seat to desired position, release adjustment lever. After that, move the seat forwards and backwards to make sure the seat is locked in position.



Adjusting seatback forward and backward

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards, adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of body. After that, move the seatback forwards and backwards to make sure the seatback is locked in position.

■ Folding seatback



The left and middle seatbacks are folded at the same time (the right seat is folded in the same way).

Adjust height of seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and store middle armrest. Then pull the left seatback adjustment handle upward and pull seatback forward to fold down.

READ

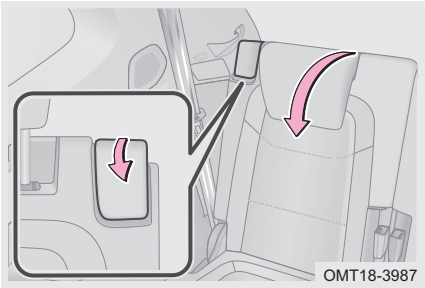
Folding the second row seatback can enlarge the luggage storage space (For details, refer to "Precautions for Luggage Storage" in this section).

WARNING

- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean your body against it to make sure that the seat is locked in position.
- When folding seat, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.
- Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will prevent the seat from moving.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.

Third Row Seat (7-seat, Folding Seats)

■ Folding rear seats (Take right side for example)



1. Adjust height of rear seat head restraints, remove them if necessary (For details, refer to "Head Restraints" in this section).
2. Stow rear seat belt.
3. Pull unlock button on upper part of seatback by hand to release the seatback while pulling the seatback forward and folding it down. The rear seatback folded is flush with back door carpet.

⚠ CAUTION

- When folding rear seat, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.
- There is a webbing buckle at the luggage compartment guard. When folding middle and rear seats, the middle and rear seat belt webbing can be stored into it.

- Front seat position and seatback angle adjustable range (Following data are applicable to power and manual seats):

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm; When at design position, it can be adjusted 200 mm forward and 40 mm backward;

The seatback design angle is 25 degrees; When at design angle, it can be adjusted 30 degrees forward and 50 degrees backward.

- Second row seat (5-seat) seatback angle adjustable range:

The seatback design angle is 25 degrees; When at design angle, it can be adjusted 16 degrees forward and 6 degrees backward.

Second row seat (7-seat) front and rear position and backseat angle adjustable range:

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 160 mm; When at design position, it can be adjusted 120 mm forward and 40 mm backward; The seatback design angle is 25 degrees; When at design angle, it can be adjusted 30 degrees forward and 12 degrees backward.

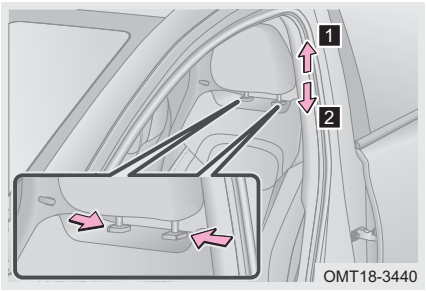
- Third row seat (7-seat) seatback angle adjustable range:

The seatback design angle is 25 degrees; When at design angle, it can be adjusted 6 degrees forward and 4 degrees backward.

Note: When measuring the seat depth, seats and seatbacks should be adjusted to the original (design) positions.

Head Restraints

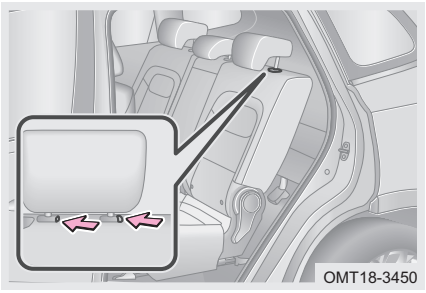
■ Adjusting head restraint



1 When adjusting head restraint upward, pull it up to a proper height simply.

2 When adjusting head restraint downward, push it down while pressing head restraint master unlock button by hand.

■ Removing head restraints



To remove head restraint, press and hold 2 lock release buttons at the same time until the head restraint lever is unlocked completely and then pull it out.

When adjusting the third row head restraint, first lift it up until lock release button can be seen and then operate.

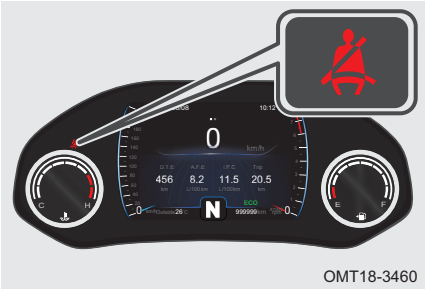
To reinstall the head restraint, align the head restraint lever with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

⚠ WARNING

- Always adjust the head restraint to correct position.
- Do not drive vehicle with head restraints removed.
- After adjusting the head restraint, push it down and make sure that it is locked in position.

3-8. Seat Belts

Seat Belts



OMT18-3460

Front seat belts are not buckled or fastened firmly:

When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, front seat belt indicator blinks, and when vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, indicator blinks accompanied by sound alarm.

Rear seat belts are not buckled or properly fastened (red indicator indicates belt is not fastened, green indicator is fastened) (if equipped):

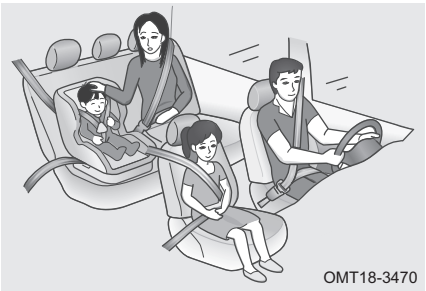
When vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, rear seat belt indicator comes on and goes off after 30 seconds accompanied by sound alarm.

If the seat belt is released while driving, a alarm will be sent as described above. When any of the followings are met, alarm will stop:

- Fasten the seat belt correctly.
- Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode.

CAUTION

- Vehicle speed mentioned in this section refers to speed displayed by meter.
- Do not turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode during driving.
- Depending on the vehicle configuration, only some models are equipped with front passenger seat belt unfasten/second row seat belt unfasten alarm function.


OMT18-3470

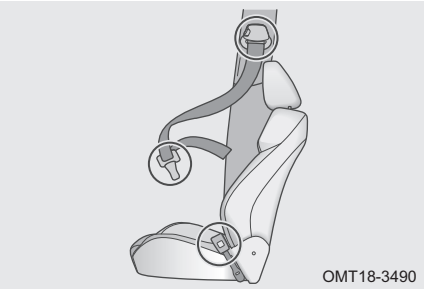
We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any sat belt function failure is found, contact Chery authorized service station immediately to inspect, repair or replace the belt.

■ Correct use of seat belt



- Adjust seatback position, sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Maintenance of seat belt

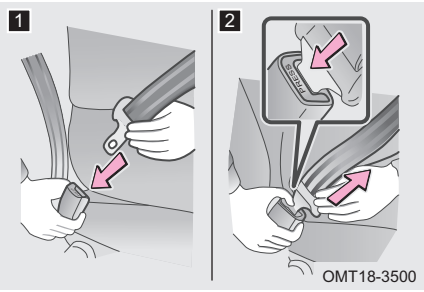


The seat belt should be inspected regularly for damage or frays. Any stretched seat belt (such as: after a traffic accident) should be inspected at once by Chery authorized service station or replace relevant components as needed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor mechanism.
- Do not use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Do not clean it by artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.

■ Fastening and releasing seat belt



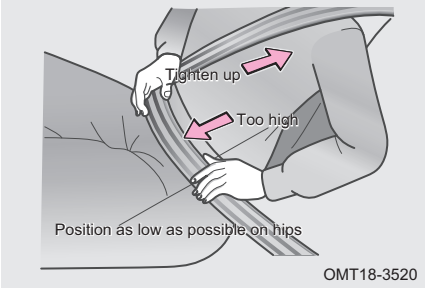
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the tab into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt does not retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, improper engagement may cause serious injury.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Adjust three-point type seat belt position

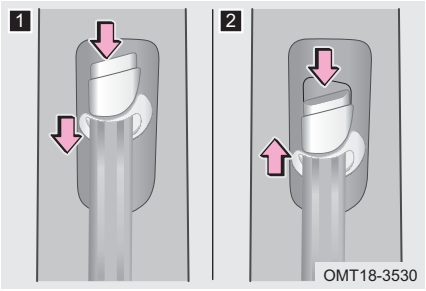


The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly, but will not lock when pulling it out slowly. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips not on your waist, then adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward.

CAUTION

- Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Ensure that all the passengers wear their seat belts.
- When pulling out seat belt, it may lock if too much effort is applied, or the vehicle is on a slope.
- One seat belt is only for one person. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- We recommend that children be seated in the rear seat and always use seat belt or appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not wear unfitted clothes while driving to prevent seat belt from contacting with your body closely, otherwise, best protection effect is not achieved.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when passengers are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the effect of protection in an accident.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended events. Keep the lap belt positioned on hips as low as possible.

■ Seat belt height adjuster (front seats)



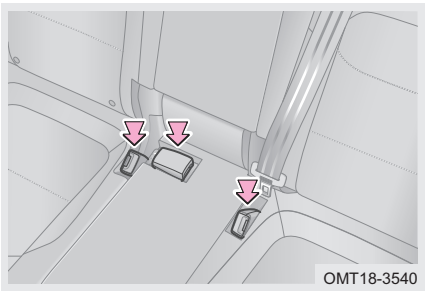
Adjust downward

1 Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

Adjust upward

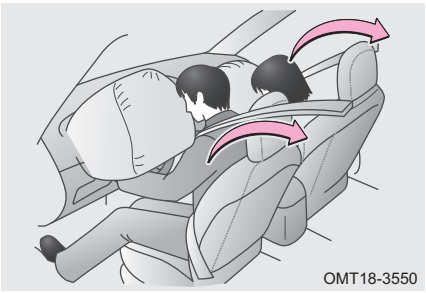
2 Push seat belt adjuster upward while pressing adjusting button.

■ Second row middle seat belt buckle storage position



The second row middle seat belt buckle is stored in seat bag. The rear seat belt buckles should be stored when not in use. When folding the rear seatback, be sure to store the seat belt buckle.

Seat Belt Pretensioner



Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.

- The gas produced does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.
- Once the seat belt pretensioner is activated, the seat belt retractor will lock.
- Seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
- In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
- Seat belt pretensioners and airbags work together in all crashes.
- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas.

- When sensor detects an unavoidable severe impact, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.

CAUTION

In some cases, it may prevent the seat belt pretensioner from working properly:

- Modify suspension system.
- Modify front body section.
- Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
- Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

WARNING

- If the pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator will come on. In this case, the seat belt cannot be used again, make sure to replace it.
- Do not modify, remove, hit, open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag sensor, and assembly wire. Failure to do so may prevent the seat belt pretensioner from being properly activated and cause the system to be accidentally operated and disabled, which may result in serious injury or death.

If any of the followings occur, there may be malfunction in airbag or seat belt pretensioner. Please contact Chery authorized service station as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

- Airbag malfunction indicator comes on during driving.
- Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
- Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, the airbag malfunction indicator does not perform self-check or remains on.
- Seat belt cannot be retracted or pulled out due to malfunction or seat belt pretensioner activated.

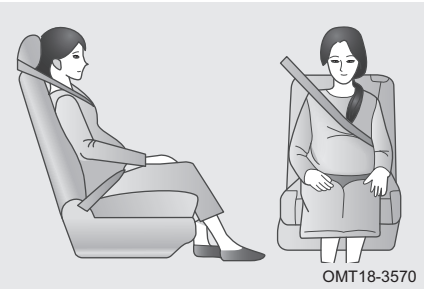
■ Methods and precautions for using seat belt by a child

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (For details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section) appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.


OMT18-3560

Do not allow children to stand or kneel on either front or rear seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury during emergency braking or a collision. Also, do not let a child sit on an adult's laps. Holding a child in arms cannot provide sufficient restraint.

■ Methods and precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman


OMT18-3570

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if seat belt is not obviously damaged, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and replace as needed.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by Chery authorized service station.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts.
- Ensure that the belt and the tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, immediately contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Do not use a damaged seat belt and replace it with a new one. A damaged seat belt cannot protect a passenger from serious injury.

3-9. Child Restraint Systems

Safety Instruction for Using Child Restraint System

Always use child restraint system when driving with a child to prevent serious injury due to incorrect sitting in an accident.

Please read the instruction manual for child restraint system carefully before installing and using the child restraint system. In addition, obey local regulations regarding driving with children.

A child restraint system for infant must be properly restrained on the seat. It must be installed strictly according to instructions of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system. Installation instructions for universal child restraint system are provided in this manual.

Child restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, child sitting in the rear seat and properly restrained is safer than child in front seat.

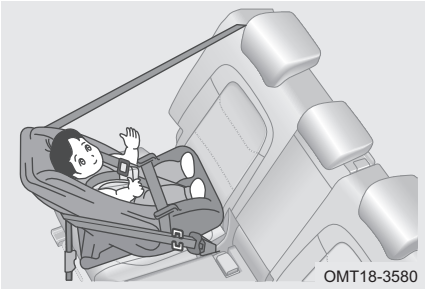
⚠ WARNING

- Child restraint system must be installed in rear seat.
- Always read installation instructions for child restraint system and make sure to install firmly when using the child restraint system.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. For any damage or accident caused by the failure of using child restraint system, Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will assumes no responsibility.

3 types of child restraint system that can be secured with seat belts will be introduced in the manual.

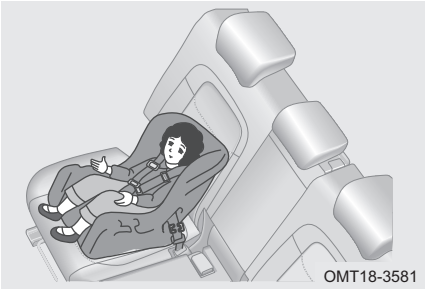
Please install the child restraint system according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

■ Rear-facing infant seat



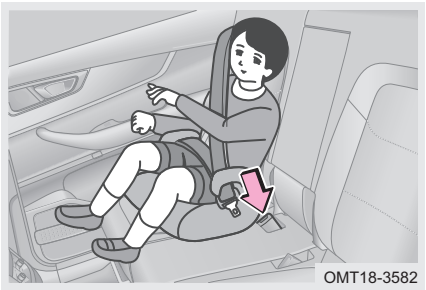
The rear-facing infant seat should be installed facing direction opposite to that of vehicle traveling. In an accident, if a infant faces front windshield, it is likely to hurt his/her vulnerable central spine and spinal cord. Facing vehicle rear, infant's head, neck and torso can be protected by the seat. Rear-facing infant seat is the most suitable for infants to use and is very convenient to carry. It is recommended to apply to Grade 0 and Grade 0+.

■ Forward-facing child restraint systems



The forward-facing child restraint system should be installed facing vehicle traveling direction. It is recommended for group I: 9 - 18 kg.

■ Heightening child restraint systems



For the expandability of child restraint system function, a separate booster cushion can be used. When the child is shorter and lighter, a booster cushion can be used to increase the child's line of sight in vehicle and secure child properly.
(Vehicle seat belt met international standards is designed according to body size of person over 1.5m. If any under 1.5m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident.) It is recommended for group II and group III child restraint system.

Child Restraint System Group

Child restraint system should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint system and child safety prevention system (ECE R44), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after tested by ECE R44 standard. There is information, such as mass group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

According to regulations, child restraint system can be roughly divided into the following 5 groups:

Mass Group	Child Weight
Group 0	0 to 10 kg
Group 0+	0 to 13kg
Group I	9 to 18 kg
Group II	15 to 25 kg
Group III	22 to 36 kg

- Mass group 0/0+: Apply to Grade 0/0+ or Grade 0/I rear-facing infant seat;
- Mass group I: Apply to Grade I or Grade II child restraint system with built-into seat belt system;
- Mass group II/III: Grade II applies to child restraint system with seatback, Grade III applies to child restraint system without seatback.

Applicable child restraint system for passenger seat:

Mass Group	Front Passen-gerSeat	Second RowOut-board Seat	Second RowCen-ter Seat	Third RowSeat (If Equipped)
Group 0 (0 to10 kg)	X	U, L	X	U
Group 0+ (0 to13 kg)	X	U, L	X	U
Group 1 (9 to18 kg)	X	U, L	X	U
Group 2 (15 to25 kg)	X	UF, L	X	U
Group 3 (22 to36 kg)	X	UF, L	X	U

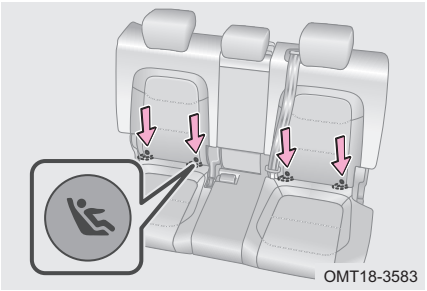
L: If the vehicle is listed in applicable model list of the child restraint system manufacturer, it is suitable for child restraint systems of "semi-universal" categories approved for use in this mass group;

U: Suitable for child restraint systems of "universal" categories approved for use in this mass group;

UF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" categories approved for use in this mass group;

X: Not suitable for installing any type of child restraint systems in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



ISOFIX fixing point is an installation system based on local motor vehicle standards for child restraint system and child safety prevention system (ECE R44).

ISOFIX fixing point is located on lower of rear outboard seatback. Generally, the fixing point is near the mark "" on lower of rear outboard seatback.

WARNING

Please strictly follow installation instructions providedby the child restraint system manufacturer when connecting the childrestraint system to ISOFIX fixing point.

Size class for ISOFIX: Using child restraint system size class applied for ISOFIX connector, helping user to select proper child restraint system type.

Size Class	Description
A	Full-size forward-facing child restraint systems
B	Reduced-size forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	Reduced-size forward-facing child restraint systems
C	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	Rear-facing infant seat
F	Left lateral-facing infant seat
G	Right lateral-facing infant seat

Applicable type for ISOFIX:

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixing Device	Seat Position			
			Front Passenger-Seat	Second Row-Outboard Seat	Second Row-Center Seat	Third Row-Seat (If Equipped)
Group 0 (up to 10 kg)	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X	X
Group 0+ (up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X	X
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)	/	(1)	/	/	/	/
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)	/	(1)	/	/	/	/

X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system;

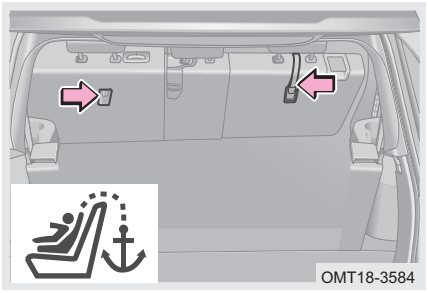
IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of "specific vehicles" or "semi-universal" categories approved for use in this mass group;

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" categories approved for use in this mass group;

(1): Child restraint system without ISO/XX weight group mark (A to G). For more details about applicable mass group, please check model list for ISOFIX child restraint system.

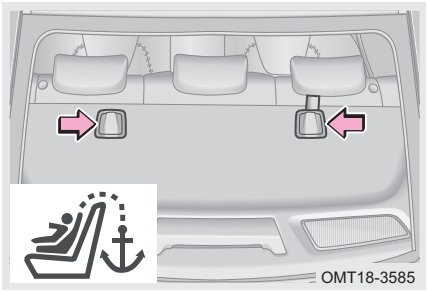
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point

■ SUV and hatchback model



This model is equipped with specific upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint systems, and these upper fixing points are located on the back of rear seats.

■ Saloon model



This model is equipped with specific upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint systems, and these upper fixing points are located on coating hook behind the head restraint.

Before using, remove head restraint where child restraint system should be installed, and then hang the hook on child restraint system into upper fixing point, be carefully to avoid strap on hook directly striding or bypassing head restraint, and head restraint and strap should not interfere with each other. Always fasten strap after hook is hung into upper fixing point. For details about fixing and fastening child restraint system upper strap, refer to instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow upper strap to stride or bypass head restraint and always fasten strap after installing, incorrect installation may cause serious injury to child.
- SUV and hatchback model: For vehicle with luggage cover on luggage compartment, remove luggage cover before child restraint system is fixed on fixing point.

Child Restraint System Installation

Follow instructions provided by child restraint system manufacturer. Secure the child restraint system to the rear seat with a seat belt or child seat anchor. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING

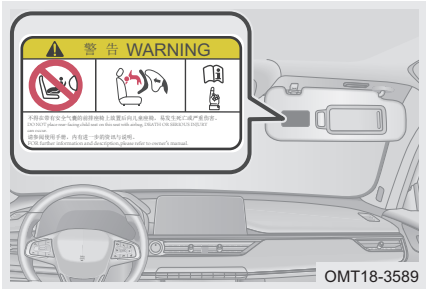
Child restraint system precautions:

- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or an appropriate child restraint system installed on rear seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child seat.
- Follow instructions provided by child restraint system manufacturer to install it properly. If the child restraint system is not properly installed, it may cause death or serious injury to child in an emergency stop, emergency steering or accident.
- If the child restraint system interferes with locking device of front seat, do not install child restraint system in rear seat. Otherwise, child or front occupant may be killed or seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not allow child to play with the child restraint system lock function belt. If a belt twists around a child's neck, it may not be released, leading to chocking, other serious injuries or even death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be released, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

When child restraint system is not used:

- When the child restraint system is not in use, it should also be fixed properly on the seat. Do not place unfixed seat system in the passenger cabin.
- If it is necessary to remove seat restraint system, take it out after removing or store it properly in luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden steering or an accident.

■ Precautions for using child restraint system



This label is attached to frontal side and backside front passenger side sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbags. Please pay attention to the relevant matters.

1. Never install rearward-facing child restraint system in seat protected by front airbag (active state).
2. Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
3. Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on rear seat.
4. If you violate the above three precautions, any subsequent result will be borne by the user.

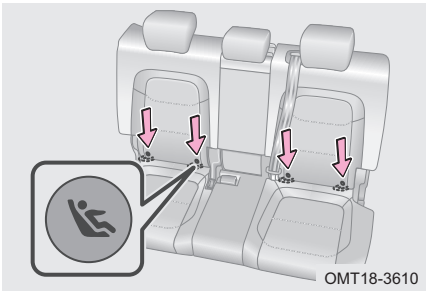
⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow anyone to stand or sit in front of the passenger seat.
- Do not use rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat equipped with an enabled front air bag.
- Do not allow passenger to sit on front passenger seat when front passenger airbag is disabled.
- Ignore the above precautions may cause serious personal injury or even death.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- High-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended events. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on a child's hips as possible.

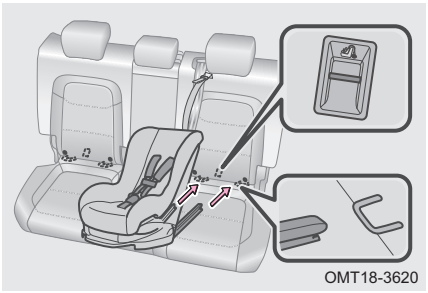
WARNING

If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect child from death or serious injury. Please go to Chery authorized service station immediately. Do not install child system on the seat until the seat belt is repaired.

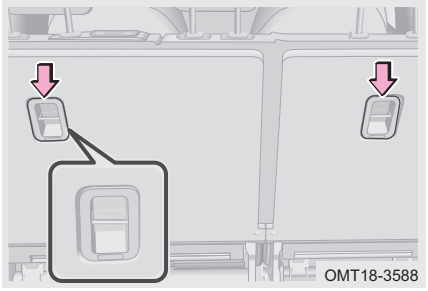
■ Installing child restraint system (ISOFIX)



1. Find the lower retaining ring used to secure child restraint system;
2. Put the child restraint system on second row seat;



3. Insert and secure lower hook of child restraint system to lower retaining ring;



4. Pull out the ribbon on the child restraint system and fix it with the upper fixed point (TOP-TETHER) for the forward child restraint system (as shown in the figure).

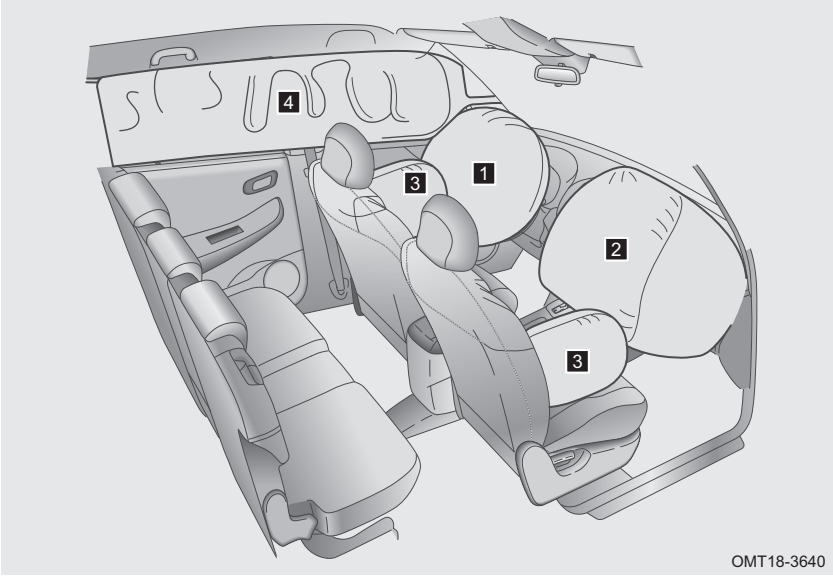
⚠ WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked in place and the belt is not twisted.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Push and pull child restraint system in different directions to ensure that it is securely installed.
- Follow installation instructions provided by child restraint system manufacturer to install.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system on a set of retaining rings.
- If the child weighs more than 22 kg, it is not allowed to fix the child restraint system using retaining rings.
- If retaining ring device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please replace it at Chery authorized service station.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the right rear seat.
- When installing the child restraint system, please follow instructions in its installation manual and fix it securely in place.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. Otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by manufacturer.

3-10.Airbag (SRS)

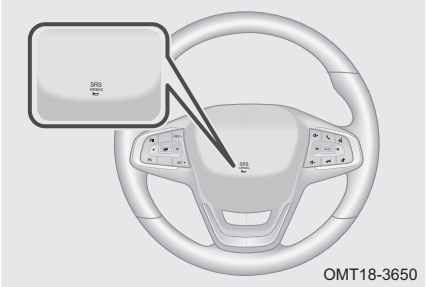
Airbag (SRS)

In severe frontal/side collision, when deployment conditions are met, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly even stop, thus reducing the risk of occupants and driver injury.



1 Driver airbag
2 Front passenger airbag
3 Seat side airbag (if equipped)
4 Curtain shield airbag (if equipped)

■ Driver airbag



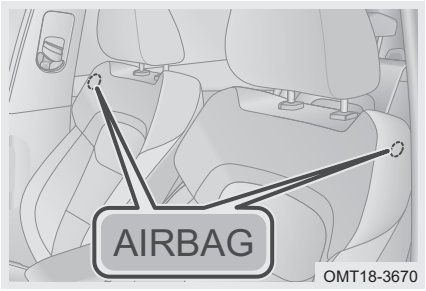
When driver airbag is triggered, the airbag cover will be opened from steering wheel and the airbag deploys.

■ Front passenger airbag



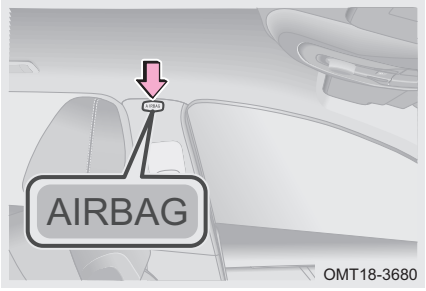
When front passenger airbag is triggered, the airbag cover will be opened from instrument panel and the airbag deploys.

■ Front seat side airbag (if equipped)



When vehicle is subjected to side collision and deployment conditions are met, front seat side airbag of impacted side deploys. Besides seat belt, front seat side airbag is a kind of device that can provide more protection for driver and front passenger.

■ Curtain shield airbag (if equipped)



When vehicle is subjected to side collision and deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbag can provide head protection for passengers sitting on front seat and rear outside seat of impacted side, reducing risk of injury.

Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag

■ Airbag malfunction indicator

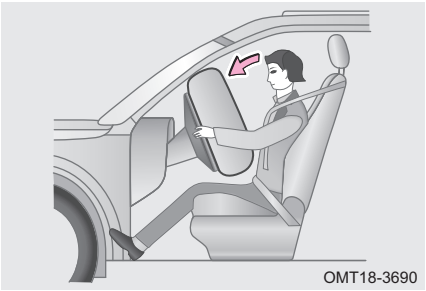
If any of the followings occurs, it indicates that the airbag is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible:

- Airbag malfunction indicator comes on or flashes while driving.
- When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, airbag malfunction indicator does not come on, remains on or flashes.

■ Airbag inflation

- After a airbag is inflated, it will discharge gas quickly, and some parts of the airbag module may generate heat. Do not touch any related parts at this time.
- After the airbag is inflated, the vehicle automatically unlocks doors, illuminates interior lights, and turns on hazard warning lights.
- In addition, when airbag is discharging gas, some smoke and dust will be emitted. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get off as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel and instrument panel are damaged or cracked, please go to the Chery authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.

■ Proper usage of airbag


OMT18-3690

- The airbag works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, the seat belt is the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the occupants and drivers. Therefore all persons in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly.

- A considerable force will be generated at the moment the airbag inflates, in order to avoid serious injury or death, never get too close to the airbag, such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward. Under the premise of ensuring driving comfort, the driver should sit back as far as the passengers.
- Airbags and seat belts can provide protection for adults and older children and are not designed to protect infants and young children (For details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section).

■ Usage precautions for airbag


OMT18-3700

- Always keep airbag inflation path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. It is forbidden to fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to design path, or the airbag may push object to occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.


OMT18-3710

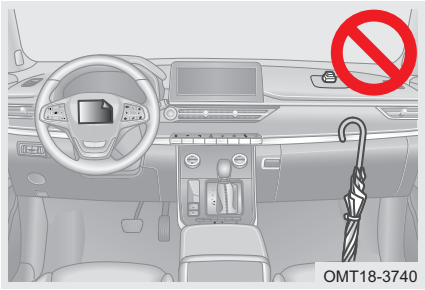
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.


OMT18-3720

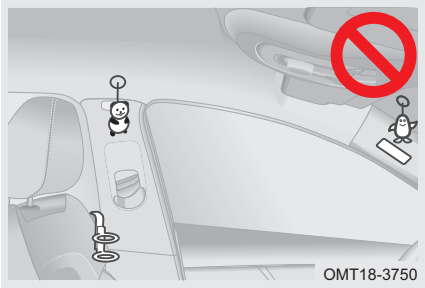
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.


OMT18-3730

- Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

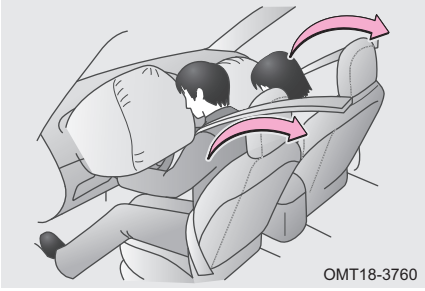

OMT18-3740

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when driver airbag or front passenger airbag deploys.


OMT18-3750

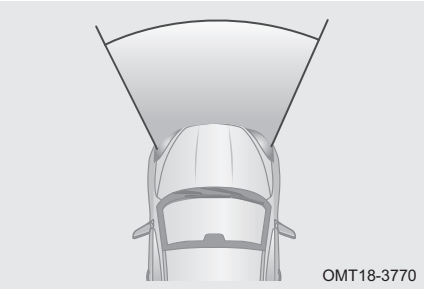
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the airbag components. Doing so can cause the airbags to malfunction.

■ Airbag deployment conditions

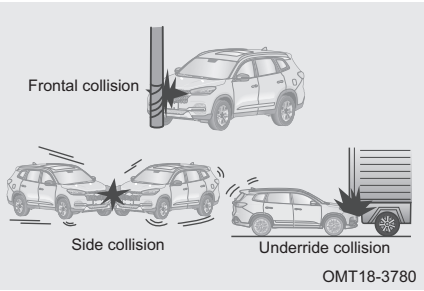

OMT18-3760

In a event of a severe frontal collision, driver airbag and front passenger airbag work together with the seat belt to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. The front passenger airbag may be activated even there is no passenger in the front seat.

■ Operating conditions



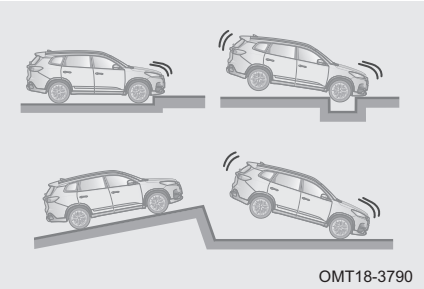
Operating conditions: In general, in a event of frontal collision, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.



The driver airbag and front passenger airbag will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to a certain speed collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

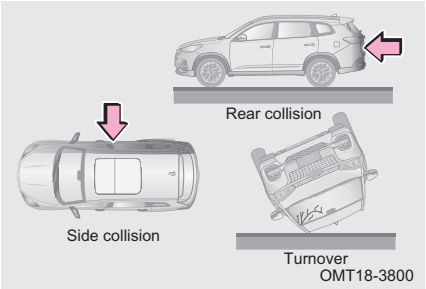
The driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole slightly, goes under a truck, or if the vehicle is involved in an oblique collision as shown in the illustration.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision

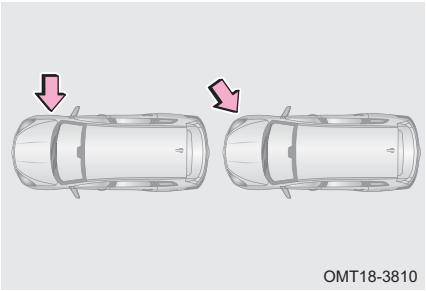


The driver airbag and front passenger airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

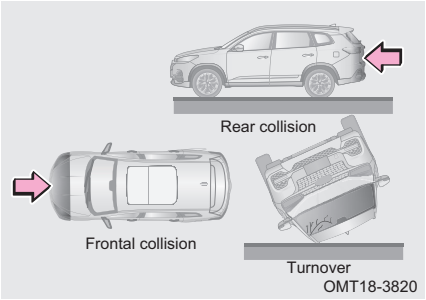
■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy other than a collision



The driver airbag and front passenger airbag will usually not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



Front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side other than passenger compartment or a side collision at certain angles to body as shown in the illustration.



Front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy generally if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

⚠ WARNING

- When cleaning front seat, do not permeate any fluid into seat, front side airbag will be wet, doing so may cause the front seat side airbag to fail.
- The seat cover should not block seat side airbag, as in the event of an accident, the seat side airbag will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.

■ Modification and disposal of airbag system components

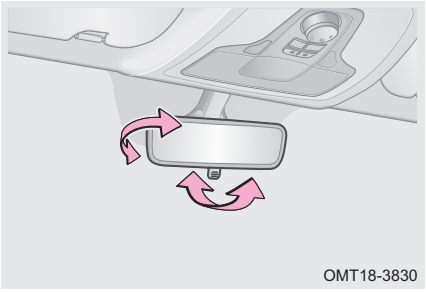
Do not dispose your vehicle or make any of the following modifications before consulting the Chery authorized service station. Otherwise, airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

Do not handle with the following components without permission of Chery authorized service station:

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.
- Modification of vehicle suspension system.
- Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.

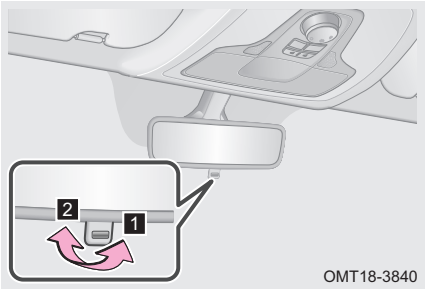
3-11.Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror


OMT18-3830

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure driver can achieve an optimum rear view. Manually adjust the inside rear view mirror to desired position.

■ Manual glare-resistant inside rear view mirror



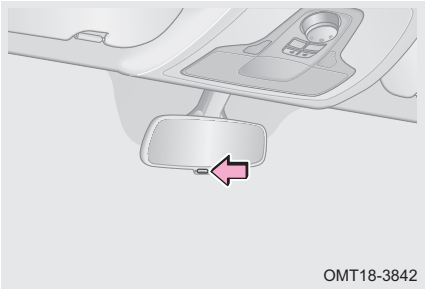
OMT18-3840

1 Day mode

2 Night mode

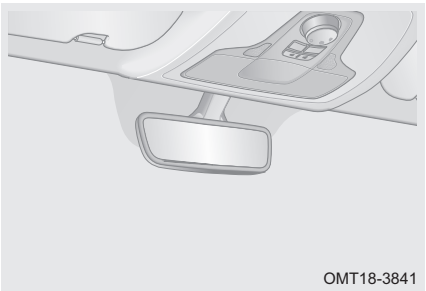
To reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind during night driving, pull the glare-resistant adjustment lever backwards to adjust the rear view mirror angle.

■ Automatic glare-resistant inside rear view mirror (if equipped)


OMT18-3842

To reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind during night driving, press automatic glare-resistant button, indicator comes on and automatic glare-resistant function is turned on.

■ Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (if equipped)

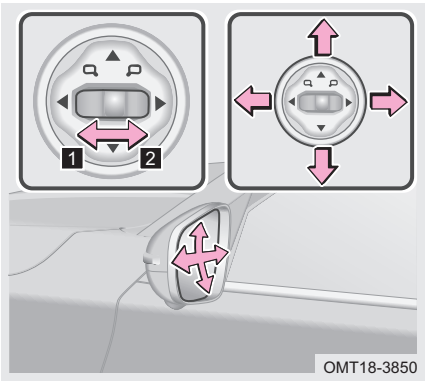

OMT18-3841

To reduce glare from the headlights of vehicles behind during night driving, lighting sensor installed front/rear of inside rear view mirror will detect automatically and adjust lens brightness.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment switches are located at driver side.

The mirror angle can be adjusted using rear view mirror adjustment switches only when engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode.



OMT18-3850

1 Move adjustment switch to left to adjust left outside rear view mirror.

2 Move adjustment switch to right to adjust right outside rear view mirror.

: Up

: Down

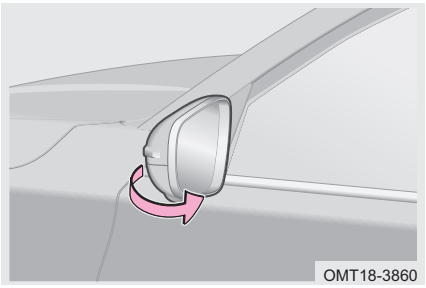
: Left

: Right

WARNING

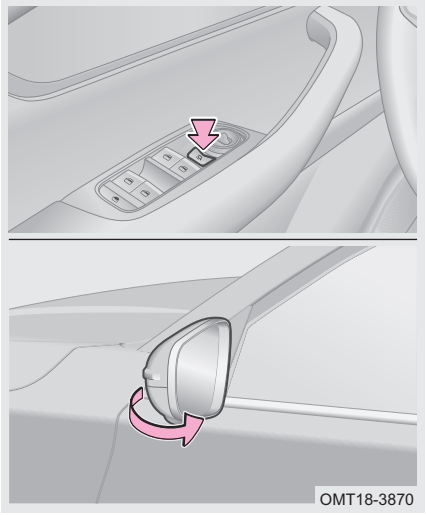
- Before driving, always adjust outside rear view mirror according to driver's position to ensure driver can observe situation behind vehicle.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.
- Do not adjust the outside rear view mirror while driving, failure to do so may result in an accident due to mishandling or even serious injury or death.

■ Folding/extending outside rear view mirror



Manual folding

1. Hold outside rear view mirror and push it backwards firmly and slowly (force increases gradually from small to large) until it folds in place.
2. Hold the edge of outside rear view mirror and pull it slightly, until it extends in place.



Automatic folding (if equipped)

1. Operate using switch: When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, press outside rear view mirror folding switch to fold mirrors automatically, press the switch again to extend mirrors automatically (do not fold manually).
2. Operate using key: In fortifying/deactivation mode, outside rear view mirrors fold/extend automatically (Details about fortifying/deactivation mode, refer to "3-2. Anti-Theft System").

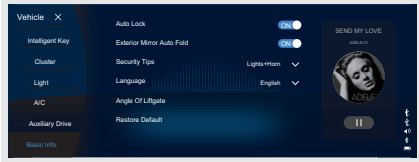
CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h, folding function is disabled and extending function is available.
- When folding and extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off outside rear view mirror automatic folding function using audio system setting. This can prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain, thus affecting the normal driving of vehicle.
- According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right mirrors are different. Therefore, when outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

WARNING

- Do not fold the outside rear view mirrors while driving.
- Be careful not to get your hand caught by a moving outside rear view mirror.
- For vehicle with power outside rear view mirror, do not fold and extend outside rear view mirrors by hand to prevent folding driver gear from being broken due to excessive force, causing its folding function to fail.

■ Setting outside rear view mirror folding function with audio and entertainment system:



OMT18-3871

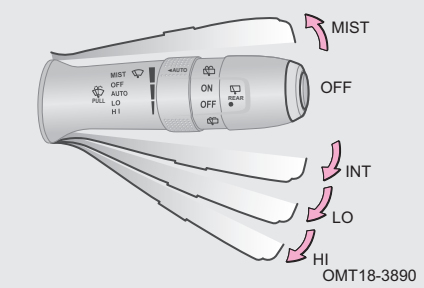
1. Touch and press "Vehicle setting" to enter vehicle setting screen.
2. Touch and press "Basic Information" to enter basic vehicle information screen.
3. Touch and press soft button behind "Mirror Auto Fold" to set ON or OFF.

READ

The specific operation screen of different models is slightly different.

3-12.Wiper and Washer System

Wiper Combination Switch



Wiper combination switch is located on the right side of steering column.

Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, switch wiper combination switch:

Mist mode "MIST"

It will return to its home position automatically once releasing. At this time, wipers will stop after wiping once.

Low speed mode "LO"

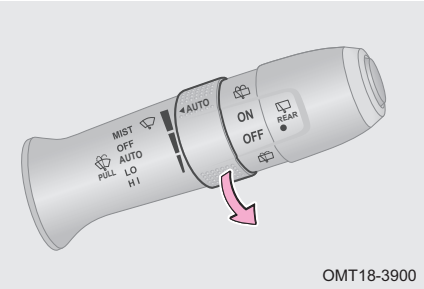
Wipers operate slowly and continuously.

High speed mode "HI"

Wipers operate quickly and continuously.

Stop mode "OFF"

Wipers will operate automatically at low speed until they return to stop position.



Automatic mode "AUTO" (if equipped)

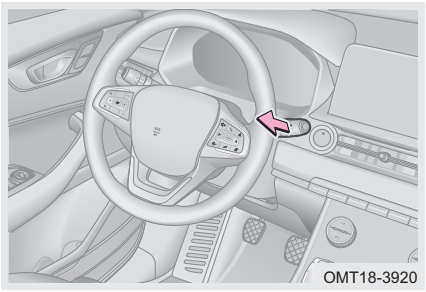
Control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall.

To more accurately control wiper sensitivity, adjust "AUTO" sensitivity knob. Rotate downward to decrease sensitivity and rotate upward to increase sensitivity.

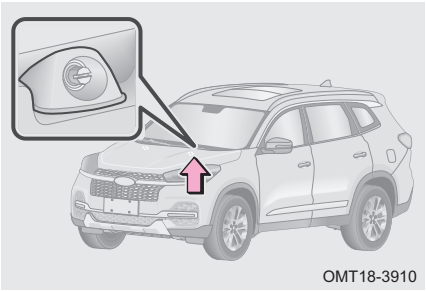
CAUTION

- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch the glass and damage wiper blade.
- If there are obstacles on windshield, do not operate wipers. Doing so may damage wiper motor or scratch the windshield.
- In cold weather, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, unfrozen it before using, failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and blade strip.

Front Washer Operation Instructions


OMT18-3920

When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, pull wiper combination switch towards the steering wheel and hold, the front wiper and washer will operate simultaneously. Washer will stop operating before switch is released, wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after 6 seconds.

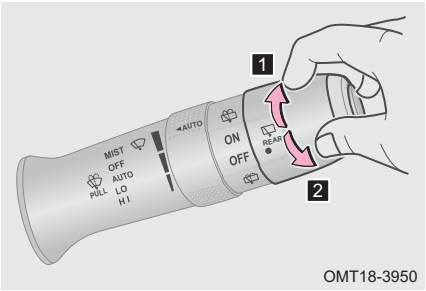

OMT18-3910

Front washer nozzles are located on front windshield trim panel.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not operate washer when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- When operating wiper and washer, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.

Rear Wiper Operation Instructions



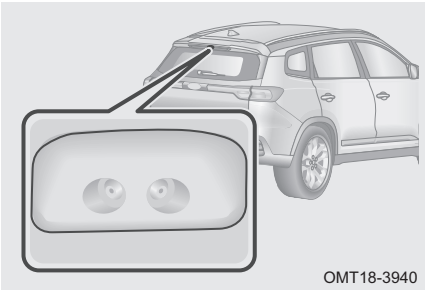
OMT18-3950

1 When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode and turn wiper combination switch "REAR" to "ON" position, rear wiper operates and turn to "OFF" position to turn rear wiper off.

2 When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode and turn wiper combination switch "REAR" to" " position and hold, rear washer sprays water, and rear wiper works at the same time. After releasing, they stop working.

READ

When front wiper is operating, shift the shift lever to R position, rear wiper automatically works.



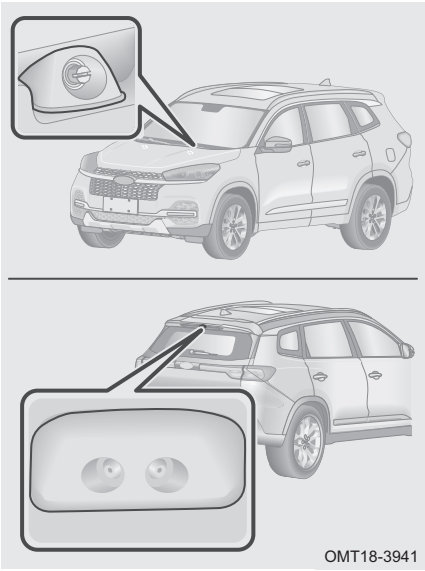
The rear washer nozzle is located above the rear windshield and below the high brake light.

CAUTION

- Do not operate washer for more than 10 seconds each time.
- Do not operate washer when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)

■ Wiper nozzle heating function descriptions:



When the followings are met, turn on front wiper nozzle heating function:

- Battery voltage is within the normal range;
- Engine start stop switch is in ON or after engine starting;
- Outside temperature is < 2°C for 5s or more;

After the function is turned on, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off when any of the following conditions are met:

- Engine start stop switch is turned to OFF or ACC;

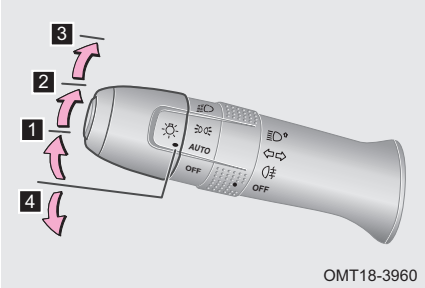
The function interrupts during the wiper nozzle heating:

- When engine starts, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts, and after engine starting, the heating function will recover automatically;

- When outside temperature is > 4°C for 5s or more, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts; When outside temperature is < 2°C for ≥ 5 s or more, the heating function will recover automatically.

3-13.Vehicle Light

Headlight Combination Switch



OMT18-3960

Headlight combination switch is located on the left side of steering column.

With engine start stop switch ON, turn headlight combination switch:

1 Automatic sensing headlights "AUTO" (if equipped)

By automatically sensing intensity of external light to turn position lights and low beam lights on and off.

2 Position lights "⇉D⇇"

Turn on front and rear position lights, license plate light, ambient lights and backlights.

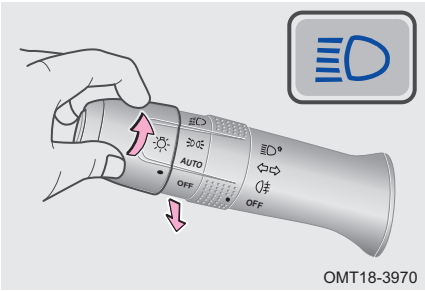
3 Low beam lights "≡D"

Turn on low beam lights and position lights.

4 Turn off "OFF"

It is used to turn off headlight.

■ Turning on headlight high beam

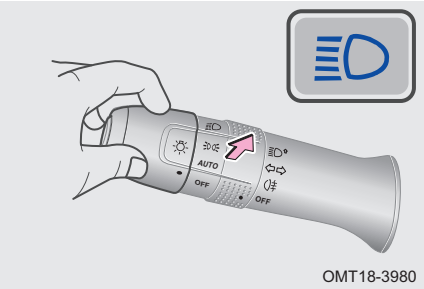


OMT18-3970

Headlight high beam

When turning on low beam light, pull headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, headlight high beam comes on.

Pull headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release to turn off headlight high beam.



OMT18-3980

Flashing headlight high beam

Pull headlight combination switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the headlights once. At the same time, headlight high beam indicator in instrument cluster blink once.

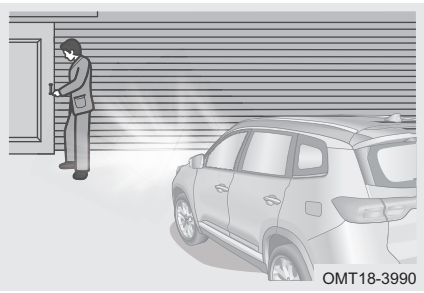
READ

- You can flash headlight high beam with headlights on/off.
- When headlight high beam is turned on, pull headlight combination switch towards steering wheel and release, headlight high beam is turned off.

CAUTION

If parking vehicle for a long time, make sure that headlight combination switch is turned off to avoid discharging battery. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle cannot be started.

■ Follow me home function


OMT18-3990

Auto mode (automatic sensing headlights)

Turn headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position, when pressing lock button on smart key in dark, low beam lights and position lights will come on for 30s automatically. And press lock button on smart key to active again.

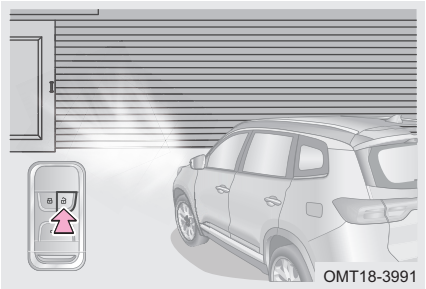
After turning headlight combination switch to positions other than "AUTO" position, or reaching set working time, follow me home function will automatically turn off, low beam lights and position lights go off immediately.

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and re-lease, the follow me home function is activated. The low beam lights and position lights will come on. Each time the headlight combination switch is operated, the low beam lights and po-sition lights will turn on for 30 sec-onds, which can be activated up to 8 times continuously.

Pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and held for 2 seconds, the follow me home function will be turned off manually; When the set operating time is reached, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights and position lights will turn off immediately.

■ Smart vehicle locating function



Auto mode (automatic sensing headlights)

Before stopping the vehicle, turn headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When pressing unlock button on smart key in dark, low beam lights and position lights will come on for 30s automatically.

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, press unlock button on smart key to activate the smart vehicle locating function. The low beam lights and position lights will turn on for 60 seconds. Press unlock button on smart key again for a delay of 60 seconds.

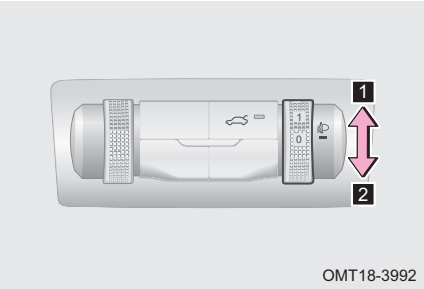
READ
For non-auto sensing headlights, it is necessary to activate follow me home function before leaving vehicle to enable smart vehicle locating function.

■ Smart vehicle locating function for key

Press lock button on smart key continuously twice within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 6 times.

READ
To enable smart vehicle locating function, it is necessary to active this function before leaving vehicle.

■ Light adjustment



1 Leveling headlight beam upper

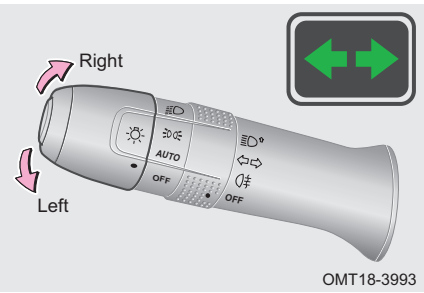
2 Leveling headlight beam lower

Headlight leveling adjusting switch includes 4 positions (0, 1, 2 and 3), which can be leveled according to occupant quantity and vehicle load.

Set headlight leveling adjusting switch as following table:

Occupant & Luggage Load		Switch Position
Occupant	Luggage Load	
Driver	None	0
Driver + front passenger	None	1
All seats occupied	None	2
All seats occupied	Fully loaded	3
Driver	Fully loaded	2

■ Turn signal lights



With engine start stop switch ON, pull headlight combination switch:

Pull up: Right turn signal lights come on.

Pull down: Left turn signal lights come on.

When turn signal lights are turned on, turn indicator in instrument cluster blinks. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

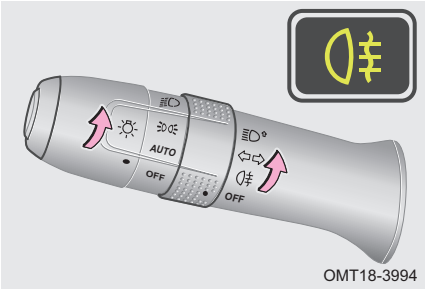
Lane change assist function

Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, pull turn signal light switch once but not over steering point, and turn signal lights flash 3 times.

READ

During small angle steering, headlight combination switch may not automatically return.

■ Rear fog lights



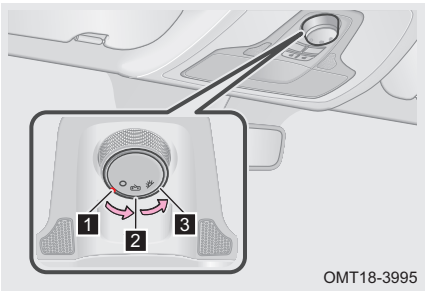
OMT18-3994

Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, turn headlight combination switch to "" position, turn fog light knob to "" position to turn on fog light, turn fog light knob to "" position again or turn engine start stop switch to OFF, fog light turns off.

READ

- When turning off headlight low beam, rear fog lights turn off at the same time.
- Use fog lights correctly in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

■ Front dome light (Type A)



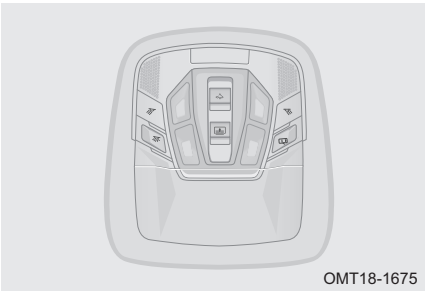
OMT18-3995

1 Dome light switch: Turn switch to "" position, at door control switch/map position, light will be turned off.

2 Door control switch: Turn switch to "" position, if any door is opened and keep opening, dome lights will be on for 3 min (fade in and out).

3 Map position: Turn switch to "" to turn light on.

■ Button type dome light (Type B)


OMT18-1675

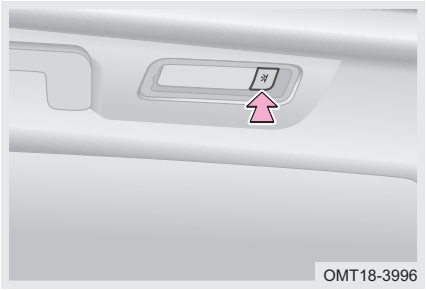
Press "" switch, illumination light will come on.

Press "" switch, if any door is open and remains open, illumination light and second row dome light will come on.

Press "" switch, left map light will come on.

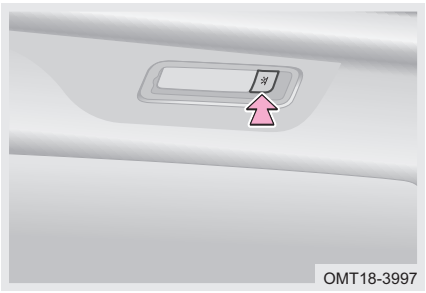
Press "" switch, right map light will come on.

■ Center dome light



Press center dome light switch to turn on the light, press the switch again to go off.

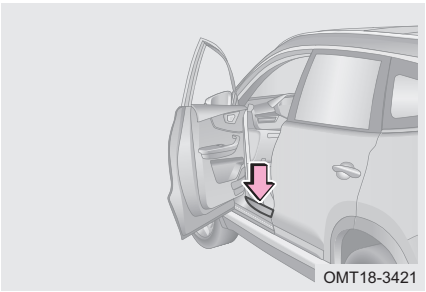
■ Rear dome light



When back door is opened, rear dome light will turn on automatically. When back door is closed, the light will go off immediately.

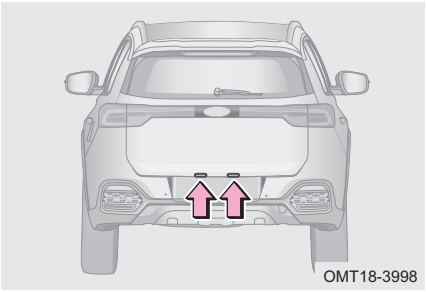
Press rear dome light switch to turn on the light, press the switch again to go off.

■ Courtesy light (if equipped)



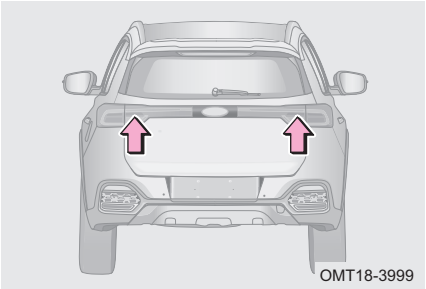
Carry the smart key to approach vehicle, the system automatically recognizes the legality of smart key. Open the door, courtesy light will come on.

■ License plate lights



Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, turn headlight combination switch to " " position to turn on license plate lights. They are used to illuminate license plate in dark.

■ Back-up lights



Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, shift the shift lever to R, back-up lights come on.

■ Door shadow light (if equipped)

With ENGINE START STOP switch in OFF/ACC, when vehicle is successfully deactivated/fortified by key, the ground light comes on for 15 s. When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned on, the light goes off.

With ENGINE START STOP switch in OFF/ACC/ON, when any door is opened, the ground light comes on for 3 min. When the light is ON, close four doors and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, the ground light will turn off immediately.

Light Fogging Instructions

When the weather is cold or humid, inner side of lights will fog up due to difference in temperature between the inside and outside of lens. After lights turn on for a period of time, the fog inside the lens will gradually disappear, and there may still be some fog at the edge of the lens. This is normal. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. When lights is fogging up, turn on low or high beam lights for 30 minutes and open light dust cover, fog on inner surface of lens gradually disappears. After the light is turned on for a while, the fog naturally disappears, which is normal.

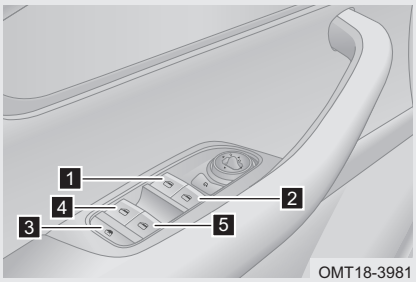
WARNING

- When wading, following vehicle wading requirements (water depth, speed, etc.), otherwise water may enter lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation to prevent water from entering.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to the serious consequences of the lights entering into water and dust!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a water cannon, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may loose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

3-14.Windows

Power Windows

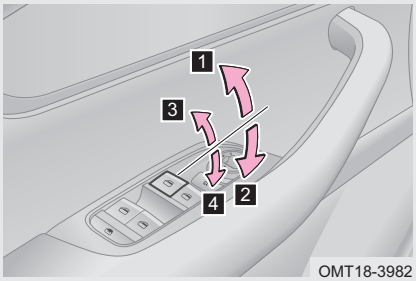
■ Operate driver door power window switches to operate four windows



OMT18-3981

Driver door power window switches are as follows:

1 Front left power window switch
2 Front right power window switch
3 Passenger side window shielding switch
4 Rear left power window switch
5 Rear right power window switch



OMT18-3982

Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, operate power window switch:

1 Pull the switch to top, window will go up automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.
2 Push the switch to bottom, window will go down automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.
3 Pull the switch upwards by one level, window will go up; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

4 Push the switch downwards by one level, window will go down; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

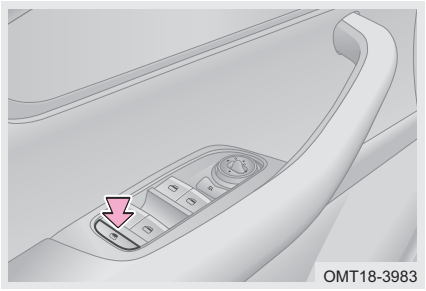
READ

- Only models with jam protection function have one-touch window up function.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating window switch, glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate again, repeat 3-5 cycles to recover.
- Be careful to close windows, failure to do so may cause serious crowded injury! For models without window jam protection function, passenger body may be caught when window glass rises to close, resulting in serious injury. For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may be not activated, resulting in serious injury.

CAUTION

When power window rises, check that any part of passenger will not be caught.

■ Passenger side window shielding switch



It is used to shield passenger side window switch function. Passenger side windows only can be operated by driver side window switches after shielding. It is recommended to use this function when there is a child in vehicle.

Press passenger side window shielding switch, passenger side window shielding switch indicator comes on and shield passenger side window witch, press the switch again to cancel this function and the indicator goes off.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and prevent children from misuse at the same time, it is recommended to ensure that engine start stop switch has been closed or non-mechanical device is also closed when leaving the vehicle.

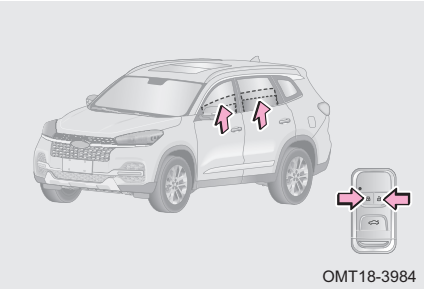
Window Remote Control Function (if equipped)

■ Window remote control down function

Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, close four doors and press unlock button on smart key and hold at least 1.5 s, four door window glass will go down. If releasing the unlock button on smart key or opening any door in this process, window glass will stop going down.

■ Remote control one-touch window up function

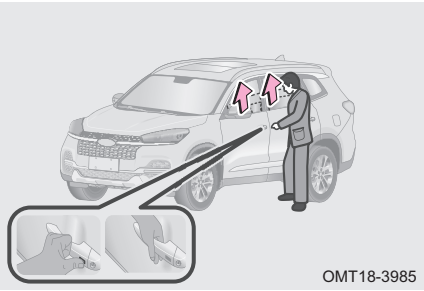
Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, close four doors and press lock button on smart key or touch lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key), vehicle enters fortifying status, and four door window glasses go up automatically.



OMT18-3984

During window glass automatic rising, press the unlock/lock button again, and window glass stops rising.

After pressing unlock button, glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.



OMT18-3985

During window glass automatic rising, touch unlock sensing area with four fingers (carry smart key on your person)/touch lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key on your person), and window glass stops rising.

After touching unlock sensing area with four fingers (carry smart key on your person), glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.

⚠ CAUTION

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up function, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm to indicate customer that window may not be closed normally.

WARNING

Be careful to seeing the vehicle clearly and making sure that passengers cannot be caught by window before using remote control up/down window function.

Window Jam Protection Function (if equipped)

■ Jam protection function

When jam protection function operates normally, during auto window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle resistance is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and goes down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate the switch again.

■ Manual learning function

If auto window up function and jam protection function do not operate normally, perform the following steps to restore function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

1. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode;
2. Operate window switch and hold for 2 s manually to fully close window;
3. Release the switch;
4. Operate window switch and hold for 2 s manually to fully open window;
5. Release the switch;
6. Try to operate auto window up function;
7. If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If power window position memory setting is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally and setting is successful.

READ

- If auto window up function cannot be restored after repeating the above steps, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

⚠ CAUTION

- If disconnecting battery cable and then reconnecting it, auto window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Do not try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even with some parts of body. Falling to do so may damage window regulation system mechanism or injure personal accidentally.
- When closing window, even if it is equipped with jam protection function, always keep window close area is clear. Otherwise, if system encounters a thin object and cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury will be caused.

■ Overheat protection function

For protecting motor, if operating window up-down continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

■ Canceling jam protection function

For protecting the window regulation system, window jam protection function and auto window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, window can be closed and opened as usual. After jam protection learning, window regulation function of corresponding door will return to normal.

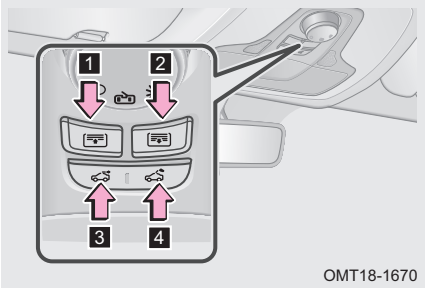
- Power window will cut power regardless of work or non-work status, jam protection function will be canceled.
- If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when going up power window, power window will stop going up, jam protection function will be canceled.
- If it cannot close after several attempts, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

3-15.Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A)

There are many ways to open and close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, remote control (if equipped) and voice trigger.

■ Moon roof switch



Opening/closing sunshade

1 Gently press "" button to slide and open sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and open fully.

2 Gently press "" button to slide and close sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and close fully.

Opening/closing moon roof

3 Gently press "" button to slide and open moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and open fully.

4 Gently press "" button to slide and close moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and close fully.

Tilting up/closing moon roof

3 When moon roof tilts up, gently press "" button to close the moon roof.

4 When moon roof closes, gently press "" button to tilt up the moon roof.

Details of opening and closing moon roof remotely, refer to "3-3. Remote Control System (If Equipped)".
Details of opening and closing moon roof by voice trigger, refer to "Audio Owner's Manual".

READ

When moon roof is open, if turning off engine start stop switch, it will return automatically.

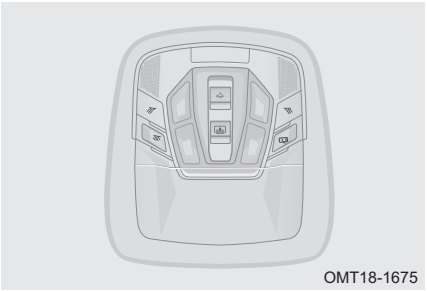
CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B)

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch and voice recognition function.

Usage method


OMT18-1675

■ Opening/closing sunshade

Push "" switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push "" switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push "" switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push "" switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push "" switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push "" switch forward when the moon roof is tilted up to close moon roof or directly push the "" switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

Push "" switch backward when the moon roof is tilted up, the moon roof will slide open. Push "" switch again, the moon roof will slide open to the maximum position.

When moon roof is open, push "" switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the "" switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- When you find that there is a false jam protection, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels, first level: Manually control opening range; second level: Automatically control opening range, please select proper level according to your needs.

CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, to prevent water from flowing into cab when opening moon roof, always wipe off water or tilt moon roof up to remove these water before opening it.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.

WARNING

Before closing moon roof, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If equipped)

Moon roof remote control open function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person during opening moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote control close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter fortifying status and moon roof is closed; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person during closing moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

During moon roof glass is closed, it will automatically return under certain resistance. When jam protection occurs in horizontal position, the moon roof glass will return to half open position. When jam protection occurs in vertical position, it will return to tilt up position.

When sunshade runs from half open state to the closed state, it will automatically return under certain resistance.

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> Do not pass body parts or objects through moon roof during opening and closing, even if it is equipped with jam protection function.

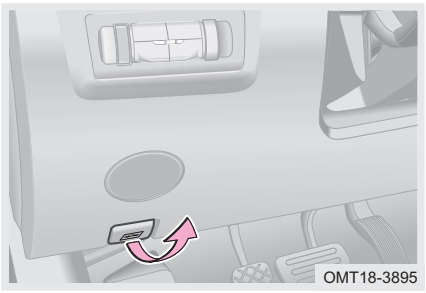
Overheat protection function

Do not operate the moon roof frequently in a short time, otherwise the motor will overheat or enter the overheat protection state of the motor. After that, the moon roof will not respond to key action. The overheat protection will be automatically canceled after the motor is cooled.

3-16.Hood

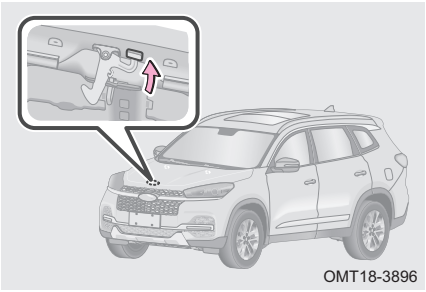
Hood

The hood release lever is located at the left lower part of the driver side instrument panel.

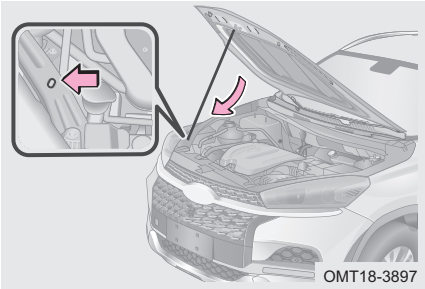


Open the hood

1. The hood will spring up slightly by pulling hood release lever.



2. Reach your hand to the center part of the hood front end, and contact with the auxiliary catch lever. Then pull it up and keep it in this position, and lift the hood at the same time. If the vehicle is equipped with gas spring support rod, lift the hood directly.


OMT18-3897

3. After lifting up it, take out hood support rod. Place one end of hood support rod into groove to support hood.

4. If the vehicle is equipped with mechanical support rod, place it to original position, first fix the support rod to the groove. Hold front edge of the hood by two hands and lower it. Release it until it reaches 15 - 25 cm away from hood lock to make it fall freely to close.
   If the vehicle is equipped with gas spring support rod, press firmly the hood and confirm that it is securely locked.
5. After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to check that hood is fully closed.

⚠ CAUTION

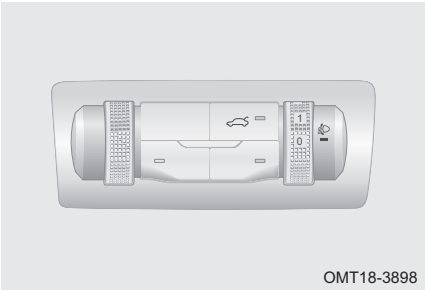
- Before closing the hood, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the engine compartment.
- When closing hood, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that the hood is completely closed before driving. If the hood is not closed completely, drive vehicle to a safe place and stop it, and close it properly.

3-17.Back Door

Back Door

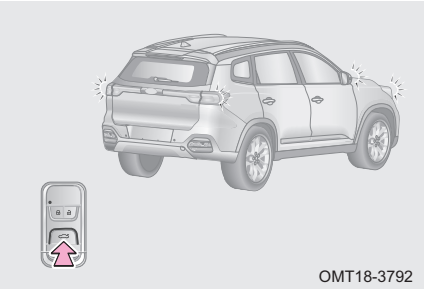
For your convenience, back door can realize many opening/closing methods, such as manual opening/closing, smart key opening, sensing opening for back door (if equipped).

■ Opening/closing power back door

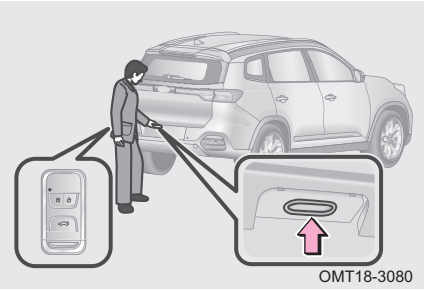

OMT18-3898

Back door switch is located on the left side of the driver side dashboard.

Engine start stop switch is turned to OFF, ACC or ON mode and shift the shift lever to P position, the vehicle is in deactivation mode, long press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and back door will open.


OMT18-3792

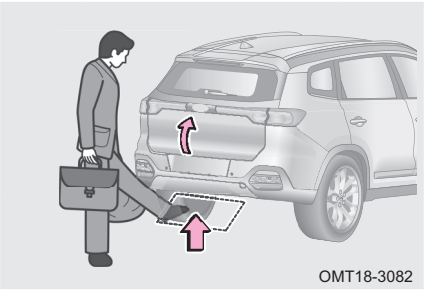
- When vehicle is locked, press back door opener button on smart key, the back door will open and turn signal lights flash at the same time.


OMT18-3080

Engine start stop switch is turned to OFF, ACC or ON mode and shift the shift lever to P position:

- Manual opening/closing: With central lock unlocked, press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and back door will open.
- Manual opening/closing: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, press switch, turn signal lights will come on and back door will open.

■ Kick open back door (if equipped)


OMT18-3082

Step 1: When vehicle is in lock state, vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

Step 2: Carry the legal key and be within the detection range behind the vehicle, quickly swing your foot and leg up and as close to the bumper as possible.

Successful prompt of kick action: Stretch out a single foot to make kick action to the lower edge of bumper. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice quickly and the power back door opens automatically.

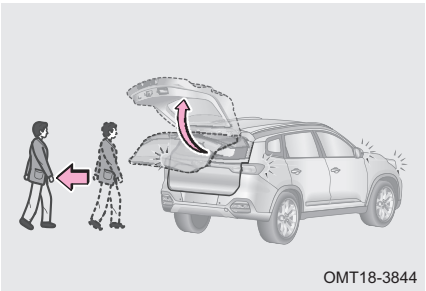
READ

- The range of kicks that the system can detect is in the area directly below the vehicle license plate.
- This function will not be triggered by sweeping left and right or kicking up but not putting down in the sensing area.
- When working or repairing in the rear pumper position, the sensor enters the environmental protection mode and no kick action is possible.
- If the vehicle does not give sound-light prompt after the kick action is performed and waiting for a period of time, it indicates that the kick action is not recognized and needs to be performed again. If the back door cannot be opened after several attempts, you need to wait for at least 10 s and then kick again under the bumper.
- Heavy rain (high-pressure vehicle washing), heavy snow, serious dirt on the rear bumper, and installation of traction devices at the rear of the vehicle, etc. may reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, which is normal.

CAUTION

- When kicking, make sure to stand on the ground smoothly and keep enough space with the rear of the vehicle, otherwise you may lose your balance, such as on rainy roads.
- During the repair, it is strictly forbidden to modify it into metal bumper, or use metallic paint for paint repair. A large amount of metal near the rear pumper may cause the kicking function invalid.
- Be careful not to kick the bumper during kicking, so as not to cause damage to the rear bumper.
- Be careful not to kick the exhaust pipe during kicking,the exhaust pipe may be very hot and may cause burns. Be sure to kick only within the sensor detection range.

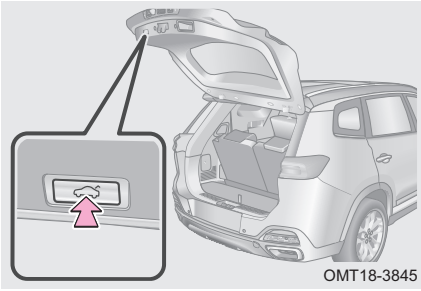
■ Sensing opening (smart key sensing) (if equipped)


OMT18-3844

Step 1: While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode or vehicle is started remotely, four doors are closed;

Step 2: Approach to the back of vehicle within 0.8 m when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back, power back door opens.

■ Power back door button instructions(if equipped)


OMT18-3845

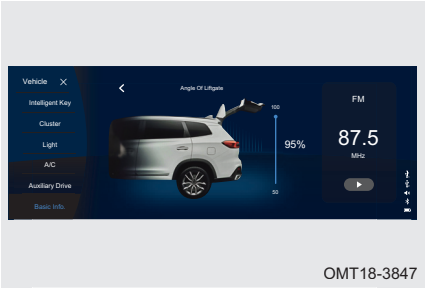
This button is located on the left inside of back door.

- It has function which can close/ suspend power back door.
- Power back door opening height can be set.

Operating method is as follows:

1. After power back door is opened, adjust power back door to desired height;
2. Press and hold power back door button until vehicle gives light prompts. Power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ



OMT18-3847

- Power back door opening height can be set in audio system (for details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).
- Back door opening height cannot be set if it is too low or too high.

■ Power back door jam protection function

- Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle, etc.), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.
- Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage compartment, etc.), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

READ

During power back door movement, activate any switch (power back door switch, power back door button and back door opener button), the back door will stop movement.

CAUTION

- After the power is cut off, it is necessary to perform power back door learning manually. The learning method: Close the back door to lock position, press back door switch to open it until the maximum opening position, and it indicates that the learning is successful.
- When the power back door is opening, do not pull electric support rod laterally, or it may cause damage to related parts.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, or it may cause damage to related parts.
- Before opening power back door, be sure to note that there should be no debris, rear wall, etc. in the opening range, which could result in scratching to back door.
- Before driving, make sure that back door is closed in place, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, operate gently, do not operate with brute force, which may damage motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open/close it by hand.
- When the power back door is abnormal, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair in timeimmediately.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.

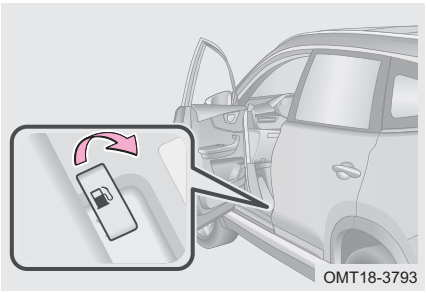
WARNING

- Before driving, the back door must be closed, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Although the vehicle is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

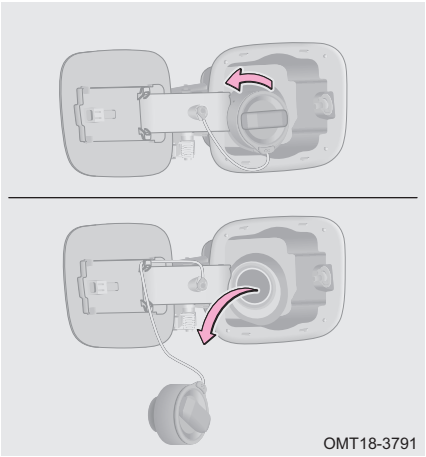
3-18.Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap

■ Opening/closing fuel tank cap (manually)

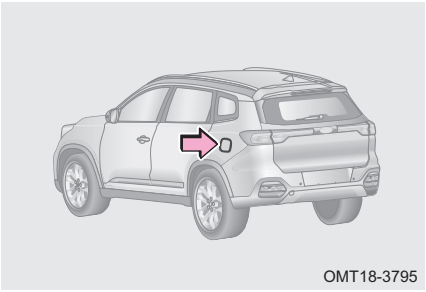


1. Pull up fuel tank cap release lever and the fuel tank cap pops out.



2. Turn fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it.
3. After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.
4. Close fuel tank cap.

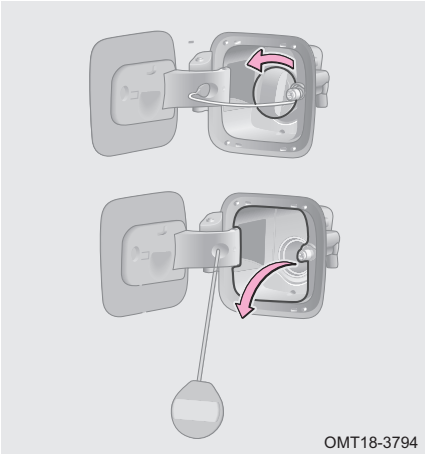
■ Opening/closing fuel tank cap (power)



1. After the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, push rear center of fuel tank cap, the cap will pop up and then slightly open to maximum angle.

⚠ CAUTION

Open/close fuel tank cap after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, otherwise, it may cause damage to related components of fuel tank cap.



2. Turn fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it.
3. After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.
4. Close fuel tank cap.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, squirted fuel should be collected and disposed of by a professional.

WARNING

- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. This is normal.
- Do not add diesel to fuel tank.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pay it.
- If the vehicle fortifying is not deactivated, do not push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage to related components of fuel tank cap.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, it is normal that tap fuel tank cap to open fuel tank cap.
- During using, if fuel tank cap is not closed, close it again after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated!

⚠ WARNING

- Before refueling, turn engine start stop switch off and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage, causing an accident.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking is prohibited when refueling, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.

STARTING AND DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Engine Start Stop Switch

Engine Start Stop Switch 166
Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission) 167

4-2. Starting Engine

Before Starting Engine 168
Starting Engine 168
After Starting Engine 169
Turning off Engine 169
Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency..... 170
Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped) 171
Adaptive Engine Control System 173
Particulate Filter (GPF) (If Equipped) 173

4-3. Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 174

4-4. Transmission

Manual Transmission (6MT) 175
Automatic Transmission 177
Driving Mode (If Equipped) 182

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) 182
Auto Hold 185
Vacuum Booster 187
Brake 188

4-6. Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 189
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 190
Operation Precautions.....192

4-7. Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 194

4-8. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System 195
Adaptive Cruise Control System (If Equipped) 197
Active Speed Limit (If Equipped) 203

4-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 204

4-10. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) 206

4-11. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System 208
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 210
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 211

4-12. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 212
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 213
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 214
Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 214

4-13. Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) 215

4-14. Speed Limit Assist System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System 216

4-15. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 217
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Malfunction Warning 217

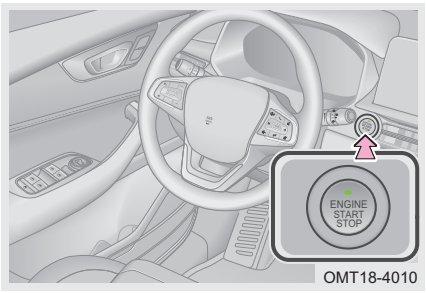
4-16. Reversing Radar System

Reversing Radar System 220
Usage Instructions 223
Cleaning Reversing Radar Sensor 226

4-1. Engine Start Stop Switch

Engine Start Stop Switch

■ Engine start stop switch is on a prominent location in dashboard, used to switch vehicle power modes and start engine.



OMT18-4010

Smart key can be detected properly when it is carried with you or placed in the vehicle:

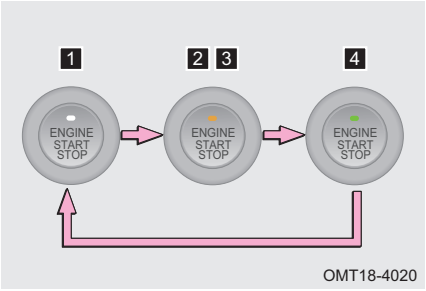
- For vehicle with manual transmission, depress clutch pedal fully, shift the shift lever to N and press engine start stop switch to start engine.
- For vehicle with automatic transmission, shift the shift lever to P or N, depress brake pedal and press engine start stop switch to start engine.

READ

- When operating engine start stop switch, one short, firm press is enough.
- If engine start stop switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not be started or engine start stop switch mode may not be turned.

■ Switching vehicle power mode

Engine start stop switch has 4 modes, when system has detected valid smart key and brake pedal is released, press engine start stop switch to switch modes (mode will be switched once each time engine start stop switch is pressed).



OMT18-4020

1 OFF mode (indicator does not come on) In this mode, all electrical appliances turn off.

2 ACC mode (indicator comes on in amber) In this mode, some electrical appliances can be used.

3 ON mode (indicator comes on in amber) In this mode, all electrical appliances can be used.

4 START mode (indicator comes on in green) When engine start stop switch switches to ACC/ON mode, depress brake pedal with shift lever in P or N position (vehicle with automatic transmission)/depress clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission), engine start stop switch indicator becomes

green, it indicates that engine start stop switch has turned to START mode, press engine start stop switch to start the engine.

CAUTION

- Shift the shift lever to P and then turn off the engine, to ensure that engine start stop switch can be turned to OFF mode.
- Do not leave engine start stop switch in ACC/ON mode for a long time with engine not running, to prevent battery from discharging. Pay attention if engine start stop switch is turned to OFF mode when engine is turned off.
- If smart key is moved away with engine running normally, engine will not turn off automatically, theft deterrent horn sounds 6 times and "Smart Key not Detected" is displayed in meter.
- If turning off engine with shift lever not in P, engine start stop switch will switch to ACC mode instead of OFF. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, check and shift the shift lever to P position, then press engine start stop switch to switch it to OFF mode.

■ Auto power off function

If engine start stop switch is left in ON mode for more than 1 hour with engine not running, the engine start stop switch will automatically turn off (for vehicle with automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P position). However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery from being depleted.

Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission)

Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, vehicle speed is 0 and engine speed is 0, electric steering column lock is locked.

Place the smart key in vehicle and press engine start stop switch. When engine start stop switch switches to ACC/ON mode, electric steering column lock unlocks automatically.

In some cases, such as when vehicle is stopped on a hill, there is a large stress between lock pin and steering column, and lock pin may be struck, at this time:

If electric steering column lock does not unlock successfully, perform corresponding operations according to prompt information of "ESCL locked, Turn Steering Wheel Press Engine Start/Stop Button Again" on instrument cluster.

CAUTION

When engine start stop switch switches to OFF mode from ON, if fortifying is not set immediately or fortifying is not successful, electric steering column lock cannot lock. To activate electric steering column lock function again, it is necessary to accelerate vehicle to more than 5 km/h and turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, realizing vehicle anti-theft.

⚠ WARNING

- If electric steering column lock still cannot be unlocked successfully and engine cannot be started, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If electric steering column lock cannot be unlocked, attempt to shake steering wheel for several times and then press engine start stop switch. Do not forcibly turn it.

4-2. Starting Engine

Before Starting Engine

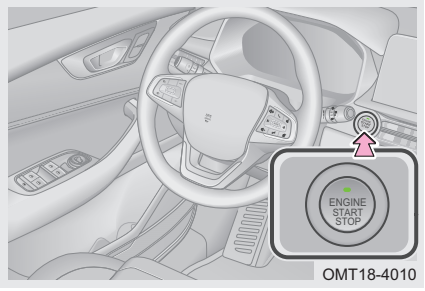
1. Check around the vehicle before getting in;
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;
3. Adjust angle of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;
4. Turn off any unnecessary lights and electrical appliances;
5. Fasten the seat belts;
6. Check that the vehicle is parked;
7. For vehicle with automatic transmission, confirm that shift lever is in P or N position;

For vehicle with manual transmission, confirm that shift lever is in N position;

8. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode, and check if malfunction indicator and other indicators in instrument cluster are normal. If abnormal, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Starting Engine

Carrying smart key with you or placing it in vehicle can turn engine start stop switch mode or start engine.



1. Shift lever is in P or N position;
2. Firmly depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission), engine start stop switch indicator will become green (if indicator does not become green, engine cannot be started);
3. Press engine start stop switch to start engine.

After Starting Engine

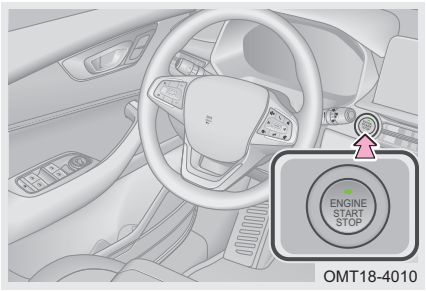
Engine idle speed is controlled by electrical control system. When engine is started, it runs at a higher speed to warm. This is normal. After the engine temperature increases, engine speed will automatically decrease to normal level. If not, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust gas contains harmful substance which may lead to a serious health hazard when inhaled. To avoid inhaling exhaust gas, following measures should be taken:

- Do not run the engine for a long time in an unventilated area, such as in a garage, etc.
- When running engine in a ventilated area, someone should control engine in vehicle, switch air conditioning to outer circulation, and set high blower speed.

Turning off Engine



OMT18-4010

1. Stop vehicle and apply parking brake;
2. For vehicle with automatic transmission, shift the shift lever to P position;

For vehicle with manual transmission, shift the shift lever to N position;

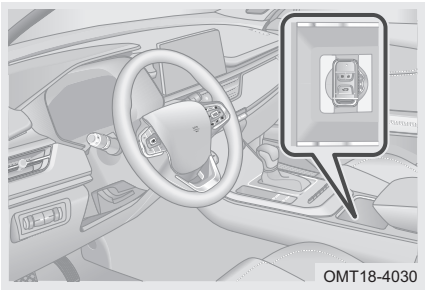
3. Press the engine start stop switch;
4. Check that engine is turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not depress accelerator pedal before engine is turned off.
- After driving at a high speed for a long time, engine temperature may be high. Do not turn off engine immediately when stopping vehicle. Allow the engine to idle for several minutes, and then turn off engine after its temperature drops. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the engine.

Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency

■ Starting engine in emergency



When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, engine start stop function will not work normally. In this case, start engine according to following steps:

1. Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console armrest (as shown in the illustration) with front side facing up. At this time, do not depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission);
2. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode;
3. Firmly depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission) and press engine start stop switch to start engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- For vehicle with automatic transmission, if engine cannot start by turning engine start stop switch to ACC mode and depressing brake pedal, press and hold engine start stop switch for over 15 seconds, at this time, system will ignore brake pedal signal and engine can be started. This procedure can only be used in special situations. Contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.
- During using vehicle daily, do not place smart key into auxiliary fascia console storage box with "key" mark (because the smart key that has sufficient battery power into auxiliary fascia console storage box may trigger instrument alarm "Smart key not detected", "Verify successfully, start ready", so there is misjudgement for owner.

■ Turning off engine in an emergency

When vehicle systems are normal during traveling, if engine has to be stopped in case of an emergency, perform as follows:

Method 1: Press engine start stop switch briefly 3 times or more in succession within 2 seconds.

Method 2: Press and hold engine start stop switch over 3 seconds.

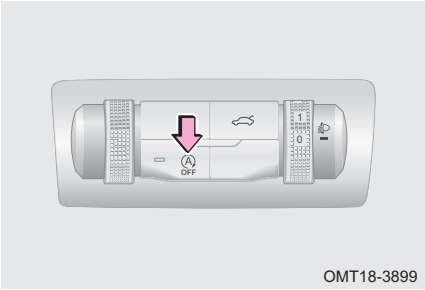
Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped)

Introduction

When the vehicle encounters a traffic light or other conditions need to stop during driving, the idling stop-start function will shut down the engine. When it detects startup requirement, the engine will automatically start. This function can improve vehicle fuel economy and reduce exhaust contamination and noise when stopping to wait.

When idling stop-start system works normally, if the followings are met, engine stops when stopping and idling. And when it is necessary to start off, it start engine automatically. Operation of idling stop-start system does not affect driver safety and the normal operation of other systems in vehicle (Air conditioning system, brake system and entertainment system etc. are not affected).

Usage method



OMT18-3899

Press the idling stop-start OFF switch, the indicator comes on and the system is OFF; Press idling stop-start OFF switch again, the indicator go off and the function will be enabled.

Idling stop-start system indicator

When there is a fault in idling stop-start system, " Ⓐ " yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When the start conditions safely are not met or idling stop-start system is turned off, " Ⓐ " yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When the idling stop-start system operating conditions are met, " Ⓐ " green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

READ

When idling stop-start system judges that the safety conditions are not met (such as, open a door while engine stopping), start engine manually by user, and " Ⓐ " yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on again. At the same time, "Start engine manually" is displayed on instrument cluster. At this time, there is no problem in system, please use securely.

Idling stop-start system activation conditions

Idling stop-start system auto stop activation conditions：

Air conditioning is not turned on.

Non-high altitude area.

Sudden braking is not conducted.

Hood is closed.

Battery is in good condition.

Brake vacuum is high enough.

Vehicle is not on a steep slope.

Vehicle speed has dropped to 0 km/h and the vehicle has completely stopped.

Steering wheel angle is not in a large angle steering state.

Driver's door is closed and driver seat belt is fastened.

After the last start or large angle steering, the speed has reached 10 km/h or more.

After turning on vehicle power and driving a distance, idling stop-start function activates for the first time (" Ⓐ " yellow indicator in instrument cluster goes off).

When the above conditions and any of the following stop trigger conditions are met, engine will stop automatically:

- For vehicle with manual transmission: Release accelerator and clutch pedals completely with shift position in N.
- For vehicle with automatic transmission: Release accelerator pedal completely and depress brake pedal with shift lever in D/M or P/N.

Idling stop-start system auto start activation conditions:

- Driver's door is closed and driver seat belt is fastened.
- Hood is closed.
- Shift position is in N (only for vehicle with manual transmission).

When the above conditions and any of the following start conditions are met, engine will start automatically:

- For vehicle with manual transmission: Depress clutch pedal and depress accelerator pedal.
- For vehicle with automatic transmission: The engine is started by depressing brake pedal when shift lever is in N and brake pedal is not depressed; The engine is started by depressing brake pedal when shift lever is in P and brake pedal is not depressed; The engine is started by releasing brake pedal when the shift lever is in D/M and brake pedal is held depressing after engine stops; Engine is started when the shift lever is shifted to R; Shift lever is shifted to D and engine is started when the shift lever is in N and brake pedal is not depressed.

Function limit

In some cases, to ensure safe driving, the system will automatically start engine without any operation from the driver, including the following:

- Vehicle is rolling away.
- Insufficient battery is detected.
- Insufficient brake vacuum is detected.
- Auto stop time is more than 3 minutes.
- After auto start is performed successful, if system detects that the driver does not depress any pedal (clutch pedal, accelerator pedal, brake pedal) and shift gear position within 15 seconds, it considers driver has no intention to start, and will automatically stop again (only for vehicle with manual transmission).

READ

If engine start and stop is triggered several times in a short time, the starter may overheat and the system will enter the starter hot protection state. At this time, auto stop will be disabled, which is not a malfunction. After driving for a period of time, after system determines starter temperature is safe, engine auto stop function recovers by itself.

Adaptive Engine Control System

After the battery cable have been disconnected and reconnected, turn engine start stop switch to ON mode and wait for 15 seconds, and then turn engine start stop switch to OFF. After that, engine can be started.

There will be some abnormal phenomenons in the initial driving, such as engine shaking and unsmooth starting off etc. These are normal phenomenons that the engine control system is re-learning to adapt to the engine.

Particulate Filter (GPF) (If Equipped)

GPF can capture particulate emissions from exhaust gas to reduce the effect of particulate emissions of vehicle. When particulate emissions from the GPF accumulate to a certain extent, the system will regenerate GPF with a specific strategy.

When "" green indicator on instrument cluster comes on, in order to avoid engine idling for a long time, increase the speed (no less than 60 km/h) in a safe and compliant manner until the indicator turns off. When "" yellow indicator on instrument cluster comes on, the particulate matter captured in GPF has reached the limit. please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

Observe the following precautions during daily driving:

1. Avoid frequent short-distance driving.
2. Avoid long time or frequent engine idling.

3. Avoid engine idling for a long time or frequently depress accelerator pedal at low speed.

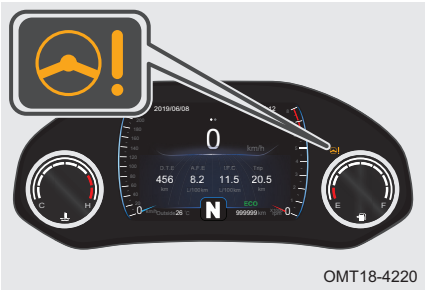
WARNING

Never park on dry leaves, hay or other flammable materials or keep the vehicle idling for a long time. Running engine or just stopped vehicle will cause the temperature of exhaust pipe to be too high, which may cause fire.

4-3. Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.



OMT18-4220

If battery is disconnected, after reconnecting or starting, yellow indicator " " flashes due to EPS initialization. Turn steering wheel full to left or right to reset angle, and yellow indicator " " goes off.

■ Electric Power Steering System (EPS) indicator

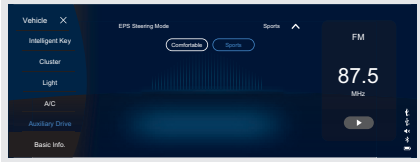
When malfunction occurs in Electric Power Steering System (EPS), yellow indicator " " will come on and there is text prompt.

CAUTION

- If operating and turning steering wheel repeatedly for a long time, mechanical device in Electric Power Steering System (EPS) may damage.
- Never turn steering wheel frequently and fast to prevent the system from overheating when parking with engine idling. If system overheats, stop turning steering wheel or stop vehicle, and turn engine start stop switch to ACC/OFF mode until system cools down.

WARNING

After Electric Power Steering System (EPS) fails, vehicle still has conventional steering ability, but you should drive carefully. In this case, contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.



OMT18-4440

Electric power steering system has 2 modes (sport/comfort). When vehicle works for the first time, the default mode of EPS is comfort.

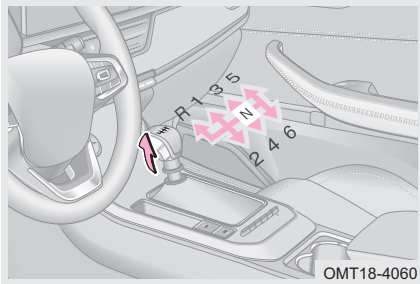
For sport mode, compared to the comfort mode, the steering assist is reduced and you will feel heavy when operating steering wheel.

READ

EPS mode needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

4-4. Transmission

Manual Transmission (6MT)



OMT18-4060

Manual transmission consists of six-forward gears and one reverse gear. Manual transmission has a re-verselock device, lift up the reverse lockdevice and then push the shift le-ver toshift to reverse position.

■ Gear shifting method

1. When operating shift lever, fully depress clutch pedal first and move the le-ver to a desired gear position;
2. When shifting to reverse position, shift the shift lever to reverse position on-lyafter vehicle is fully stopped;
3. Never shift by way of "one-push one-release". Always hold the shift lever byhand to reduce wear of synchronizer lock ring;
4. Do not leave your hand on the shift lever when shifting is not necessary, orit can cause premature wear of shift fork.

READ

When shifting to reverse position, since the reverse gear has presynchronization function, shift the shift lever to reverse position after stopping the vehicle steadily, which can efficiently reduce tooth broken when shifting toreverse position.

■ Precautions for gear shifting

- When driving downhill or turning, always use a low gear and never coastwith N.
- When shifting to high gear from low hear, never skip gears.
- During normal driving, do not leave your foot on clutch pedal to avoid unnecessary wear to clutch.
- To avoid making abnormal sound when shifting to R, fully depress clutchpedal and hold for 3 seconds with vehicle stationary and then shift to R.
- Start your vehicle at the 1st gear. When shifting, fully depress the clutchpedal to disengage transmission from engine power completely, and movethe shift lever quickly.
- Before shifting to reverse position, always make sure vehicle is stationary.When engine is running and before shifting, depress clutch pedal fully, thenshift to reverse position to prevent the transmission gear from meshingpoorly and generating noise.
- If abnormal phenomena are found in transmission, such as abnormal noises and heavy operation etc., stop vehicle immediately at a safe area andcontact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair. After thetrouble is solved, continue to drive.

■ Downshift

- Shift down in sequence and do not skip gears.
- Shift down when driving down steep slopes for safety.
- Shift down properly when starting to accelerate again for better acceleration.

WARNING

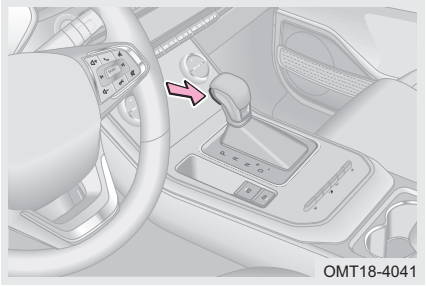
Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. Otherwise, drive wheels could lose their traction, which could cause the wheels toslip, resulting in a loss of vehicle control.

Automatic Transmission

■ Automatic transmission (6DCT/CVT25)

Your vehicle is equipped with electrically controlled mechanical automatic transmission which includes two shift modes: Manual and automatic.

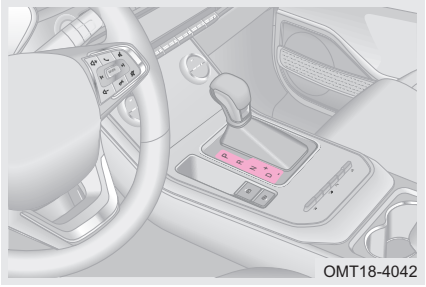
The transmission is automatic and manual transmission, which combines the functions of manual and automatic transmission. This technology is developed to improve the fuel economy and controllability of automatic transmission. It can make the shift timing automatically determined by computer return to the driver, thus improving the driving operability, enriching the driver's experience, and at the same time reducing the power loss of transmission system to a maximum extent.



OMT18-4041

The operation procedures for automatic transmission are as follows:

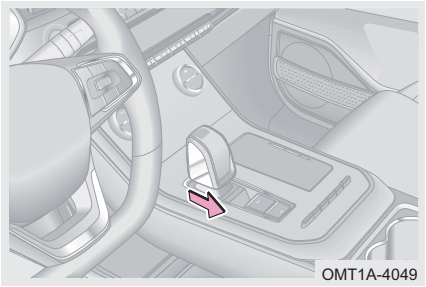
1. Fully depress the brake pedal, press the button on the shift lever, move the shift lever from P position to D position;
2. Manually or automatically release the parking brake and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly (for details about releasing parking brake, refer to "4-5. Brake System");
3. To shift the shift lever to or out of R, press the button on shift lever.



OMT18-4042

Automatic mode (P, R, N and D) and manual mode M (+, -) are available during driving. Selected gear position will be displayed on information display area in instrument cluster (CVT25 transmission is 9-speed, 6DCT transmission is 6-speed).

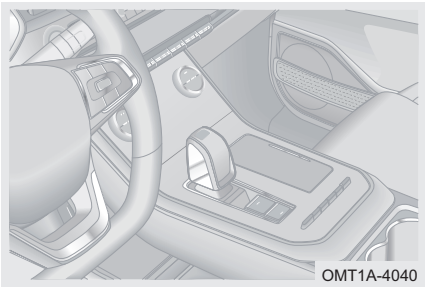
■ Automatic transmission (7DCT)



OMT1A-4049

The operation procedures for automatic transmission are as follows:

1. Fully depress the brake pedal, move the shift lever from P position to D position;
2. Manually or automatically release the parking brake and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly (for details about releasing parking brake, refer to "4-5. Brake System").



OMT1A-4040

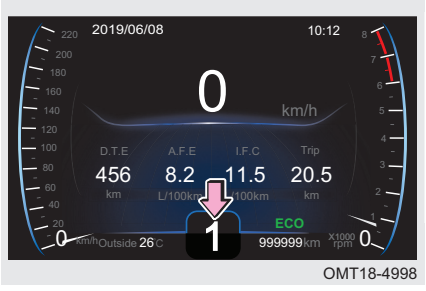
Press the P button on the shift lever, move the shift lever to P position, push the shift lever forward and backward, and move the shift lever to other position (R, N, D).

READ

Automatic mode (P, R, N and D) and manual mode M (+, -) are available during driving. Selected gear position will be displayed on information display area in instrument cluster.

- Automatic mode: After driver shifts the shift lever to D, vehicle upshifts and downshifts automatically according to speed without manual intervention.
- Manual mode: Driver can upshift and downshift, also can switch between manual mode M (+, -) and D.

■ Shifting prompt (manual mode)



OMT18-4998

Push shift lever to right with it in D to enter manual mode M (+, -), push forward to upshift by one gear and push backward to downshift by one gear. The combination meter displays that the current gear is in manual mode (M).



OMT18-4999

Shifting prompt signal is displayed.

On-board computer displays arrow and target gear range according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shifting operation:

" ▲ " : Prompt you to perform an up-shift operation.

" ▼ " : Prompt you to perform a down-shift operation.

READ

The up-shift and down-shift information is for reference only, but the up-shift and down-shift operation still needs to be performed according to actual road conditions.

The following information will help you understand purpose and operation procedures of different gears to make a right choice according to actual demand during operation.

Gear Position		Function
P (Park)		This is park position. Drive wheels are mechanically locked. Engine can be started.
R (Reverse)		This is reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and reversing radar system will operate.
N (Neutral)		This is neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D (Forward Drive)		This is forward driving position. Automatically upshift and downshift among all forward driving positions according to engine load and vehicle speed.
Manual Mode	+	Push shift lever toward + once, transmission will upshift by one gear.
	-	Push shift lever toward - once, transmission will downshift by one gear.

⚠ CAUTION

- Kick-down operation is allowed in manual mode, and automatic upshifting is not allowed.
- Never shift to P position when vehicle has not been stopped steadily. Failure to do so may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- When engine stalls, do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be easily damaged.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged.
- When moving out of P position, depress and hold brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, even depress brake pedal, shifting out from P is impossible. Contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- In manual mode, when engine speed reaches to the highest speed, it shifts up automatically; when engine speed is excessively low, it shifts down automatically; when vehicle brakes and slows down, it shifts down automatically.
- In manual mode, up-shifting and down-shifting operations must be performed by pushing shift lever according to engine speed and vehicle speed. If the requirements are not met, the transmission will not perform the gear shifting operation.
- When stopping vehicle on sloping road, apply parking brake first, and then move the shift lever to P position. After starting on sloping road, first move out of P position, then release parking brake and drive the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- Never tow vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When shift lever is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

■ Automatically shifting to P (7DCT)

With vehicle stops from speed of ＞ 15 km/h, if shift lever is in R or D, driver side door is opened and brake pedal is not depressed, it will automatically shift to P position. If the door cannot be closed due to damage of driver side door, driver can shift the shift lever to R or D after system automatically switches to P, then vehicle can be driven normally.

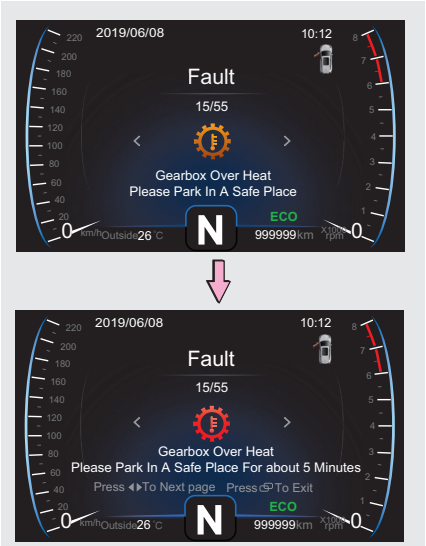
■ Transmission self-learning operation specification (7DCT)

If the battery is disconnected immediately after the engine start stop switch is turned to OFF mode, gear position loss will occur after reconnecting the battery, at this time, it is necessary to perform shift drum and clutch position self-learning, then vehicle can be driven normally.

Transmission self-learning operation steps:

1. Connect battery and turn engine start stop switch to ON mode;
2. Firmly depress brake pedal and hold for 30 seconds until P is displayed in instrument cluster, at this time, transmission self-learning operation is completed;
3. If P is not displayed, disconnect battery negative and repeat steps 1 and 2 until P is displayed in instrument cluster.

■ Transmission alarm text display



OMT18-4061

When transmission temperature is high, alarm text of "Gearbox Over Heat Please Park In A Safe Place" will be displayed in meter.

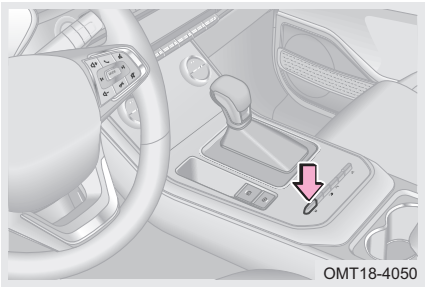
When transmission overheats, alarm text of "Gearbox Over Heat, Please Park In A Safe Place For about 5 Minutes" will be displayed in meter.

CAUTION

After vehicle cools down, if alarm text does not disappear after restarting the vehicle, immediately shut down engine and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Driving Mode (If Equipped)

■ Driving mode



When engine is started, the default mode is ECO, press driving mode switch to enter SPORT mode, and you can select mode according to road conditions.

In SPORT mode, vehicle maneuverability, controllabitity and power performance will be enhanced, thus you can enjoy driving pleasure. System will further enhance sports performance of vehicle through reducing steering assist and accelerating steering response.

After the driver switches to driving mode, this operation will be memorized. Last operating status of driver will be memorized by default after vehicle is powered on next time. This function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

■ Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

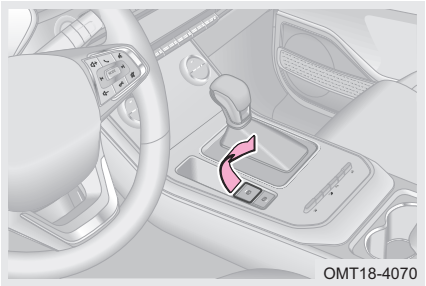
> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission may damage, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

4-5. Brake System

Front wheel/rear wheel of the vehicle adopt disc brake. Electric parking brake is adopted for the rear wheel.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional handbrake.



Applying parking brake manually:

- With engine running or engine start stop switch in ON mode and vehicle stationary, when pulling up the electric parking brake button, red indicator " (P) " and indicator in electric parking brake button will come on, indicating parking brake function has been turned on.
- When turning off engine start stop switch, Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system automatically applies parking brake.

Releasing parking brake manually:

- With engine running or engine start stop switch in ON mode, depress brake pedal and press electric parking brake button by hand, red indicator " (P) " and indicator in electric parking brake button will go off, indicating parking brake function has been turned off.

Releasing parking brake automatically:

- Fasten driver's seat belt and close driver door. When vehicle is traveling on flat road or in R, depress accelerator pedal to release electric parking brake automatically, and red indicator " (P) " goes off.
- When vehicle stops on a slope, to shift to D or R, deeply depress accelerator pedal. When driving force is greater than slipping force, auto hold can be released automatically.

READ

When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release electric parking brake. For details, refer to "6-5. Vehicle Towing" .

CAUTION

- The parking brake cannot be turned off when vehicle battery is discharged, and jumper cables can be used to start the engine (For details, refer to "6-8. Jump-starting").
- While depressing brake pedal and releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may move upward or downward slightly. In this case, just firmly depress brake pedal.
- When performing automatic releasing of parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver side door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake not to be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake. It is normal and take it easy.
- If vehicle coasts for a short time after stopping, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When brake force is increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.
- With engine starting or engine start stop switch turned to ON mode, when parking brake cannot be released manually by depressing the brake pedal, depress accelerator pedal and press parking brake button to release parking brake. This can be used only when parking brake cannot be released manually by depressing the brake pedal. Always be careful. Contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

- To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm shift position before depressing accelerator pedal to start.
- To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, when stopping or leaving vehicle and after EPB enables, red indicator " (P) " and indicator in electric parking brake button come on for a while then go off automatically. At this time, observe if the red indicator " (P) " and indicator in electric parking brake button come on to make sure that electric parking brake is successfully applied.

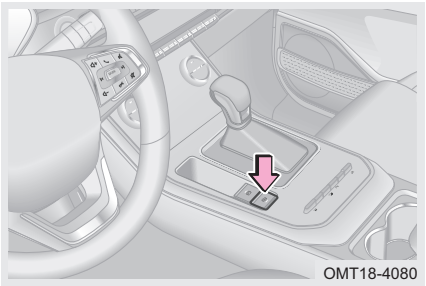
Emergency braking function:

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by electric parking brake. In emergency braking process, red brake indicator " (P) " blinks. Release the button to exit emergency braking.

WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, buzz will be heard. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- When foot brake fails or brake pedal is blocked, emergency braking function can be used in an emergency. ESP and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit, turning on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, side-slipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

Auto Hold


OMT18-4080

This function is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Auto hold function operation conditions:

- Engine is started, driver door is closed properly and driver seat belt is fastened.

Turning on auto hold function:

- When auto hold operation conditions are met, press auto hold switch on auxiliary fascia console to turn on this function, indicator on auto hold button comes on and system enters auto hold mode.

Activating auto hold function:



OMT18-4081

- When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal to slow down and stop the vehicle, then auto hold function is activated and green indicator " (P) " comes on.
- Depress brake pedal with vehicle stationary when auto hold function turns on and auto hold operation conditions are met to activate the function and green indicator " (P) " comes on.

Turning off auto hold function:

- With auto hold on, press auto hold switch on auxiliary fascia console to turn off this function, indicator on button goes off and system exits auto hold mode.
- With auto hold activated, press auto hold switch on auxiliary fascia console to turn off this function, green indicator " (P) " and indicator on button go off and system exits auto hold mode and enters EPB mode.

Auto hold release function:

- Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into wash room.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto hold release delays. This is normal.
- After vehicle starts, if driver's seat belt is not fastened or driver side door is not closed, auto hold system does not work.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver side door or unfasten driver's seat belt to switch auto hold to electric parking.
- For vehicle with manual transmission, depress clutch pedal fully, shift to D/R and depress accelerator pedal to release. If driving on uphill road, it is recommended to depress accelerator pedal in half-linkage condition for uphill starting.
- When auto hold is enabled and completely stopping vehicle from movement state by foot brake, auto hold system will park vehicle automatically. In this case, vehicle is still in D or R position. If just stopping vehicle for a short time, shift to N, and shift to P for a long time stopping.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver side door or unfasten driver's seat belt to exit this function. Close the driver side door or fasten driver's seat belt again to activate the function.

Vacuum Booster

The vacuum booster is controlled by engine vacuum and it works only when the engine is running. Therefore, do not coast your vehicle with engine off.

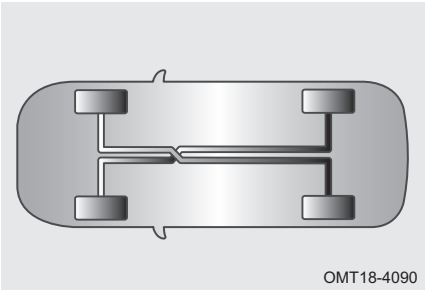
WARNING

Do not coast your vehicle with engine off while driving downhill. For better braking efficiency, shift to a low gear before driving downhill.

If the vacuum booster does not work because vehicle is being towed or malfunctioning, brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual to compensate booster braking effect.

Under normal temperature, special warm-up operation will be performed in idling condition within 15 seconds after vehicle starts (the lower the temperature, the longer the required time), to quickly heat and activate the three-way catalytic converter and improve exhaust gas conversion efficiency. Meanwhile, this condition is better for recovering vacuum degree of brake vacuum booster after long-time parking (such as overnight), thus vehicle can reach optimal state. So, it is recommended to always keep idling for 15 seconds after starting vehicle and then drive vehicle.

Brake



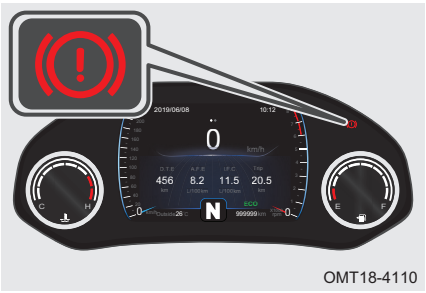
OMT18-4090

Brake system adopts X type dual circuit brake system. This system is a hydraulic system which has two independent sub systems. If one of the sub systems does not work, the other can still achieve brake function. However, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. In addition, brake system malfunction indicator comes on.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

■ Brake system malfunction indicator



OMT18-4110

- When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, brake system malfunction indicator comes on for 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction in brake system, the indicator remains on. In this case, check the brake fluid level. If it is below MIN marks, add brake fluid. If causes cannot be found, please contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

■ Brake system operation descriptions

- If constant jitter or vibration can be felt through steering wheel when braking, contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
- It is normal that brake system makes a operation sound sometimes. But, if metal-friction or whistling sounds for a long time, brake linings may be seriously worn. Contact Chery authorized service station for replacement immediately.

- New brake lining requires a break-in period to achieve optimum braking effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
- A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pull to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
- Wear condition of brake lining largely depends on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, visit Chery authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-6. Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

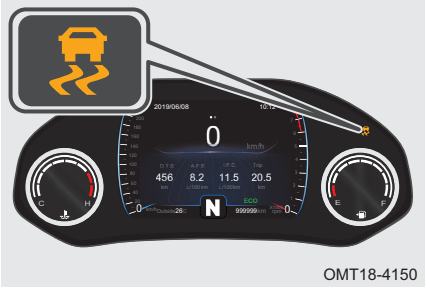
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is an active safety control system. It uses system sensor to monitor vehicle driving state. In case of unstable conditions such as evading obstacles in an emergency, turning etc., ESP adopts power system and brake system to help prevent tendency deviating from an ideal path, so that, it provides better driving safety. If applying brake to single wheel is not enough to stabilize vehicle, ESP will reduce engine torque output to brake other wheels to meet demand.

ESP integrates ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and EBD (Electronic Brake Force Distribution System) to ensure the lateral stability when vehicle driving.

READ

For details about ON and OFF of ESP, refer to "2-3. Instrument Cluster (7-inch)".

■ Electronic Stability Program (ESP) indicator



OMT18-4150

- When Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is turned off, yellow indicator " OFF " will come on.
- When Electronic Stability Program (ESP) operates, yellow indicator " " will blink.
- When Electronic Stability Program (ESP) has malfunction, yellow indicator " " will remain on.

■ Under the following conditions, Electronic Stability Program (ESP) needs to be turned off

When driving on roads with deep snow or loose roads;

When driving with snow chains;

When starting vehicle on power test bench.

READ

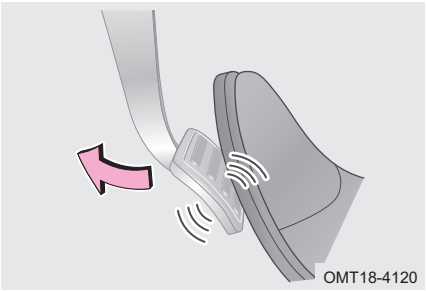
- When driving vehicle for the first time, by default, Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is on.
- Electronic Stability Program (ESP) cannot be turned off during operation.
- To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn Electronic Stability Program (ESP) off.
- If malfunction occurs in Electronic Stability Program (ESP), please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

- Even when Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause an accidents.
- The Electronic Stability Program (ESP) function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it is lost control under various extreme situations. Even with Electronic Stability Program (ESP), always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is an active safety system which is designed to prevent wheel from being locked, and maintain steering performance even in emergency braking, making you avoid obstacles. However, ABS cannot prevent vehicle slippage absolutely when it exceeds physical limits or driving on slippery road at high speed.



- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) does not operate during normal braking and operates only when wheels are going to lock during sudden braking.
- If brake pedal pulsates with noise during braking, it indicates that ABS is working. This is normal. Never release brake pedal in this case.

■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) indicator

When malfunction occurs in Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), yellow indicator " " will remain on.

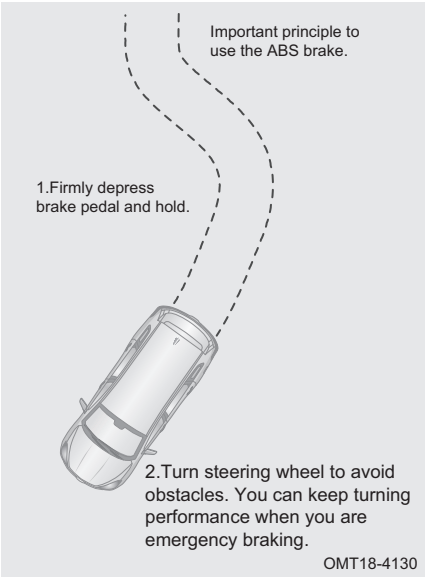
CAUTION

The driver can still apply conventional braking when ABS is malfunctioning. In this case, slow down and avoid emergency braking to prevent wheel from being locked. Drive carefully and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible to avoid accidents.

WARNING

If ABS malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator come on simultaneously, immediately stop vehicle at a safe area and turn on the hazard lights. Contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) brake



ABS works immediately in sudden braking to maintain vehicle braking and steering performance. If there is enough space, you can avoid obstacles successfully.

WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- Although ABS can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, ABS cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, wading, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot guarantee a shorter braking distance under all road conditions, such as equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads. Compared to vehicles without ABS, your vehicle may require a longer braking distance.

Operation Precautions

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

- Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
- Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
- Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
- Operation sound of solenoid valve when EBD is intervened in braking.
- Buzz will be heard for a short time after vehicle is powered on or starting engine, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on rough roads.
- When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

CAUTION

Tire size and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Tire used to replace should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When tire is abnormal, it is recommended to replace with a original type at Chery authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- When driving in rainy day, properly control the vehicle speed, if wheel spins or slips, ABS will cannot control the vehicle.
- Although ABS can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS operates.

■ Electric Brake Force Distribution System (EBD)

Electric Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD works together with ABS to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in corner, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

■ Traction Control System (TCS)

Traction Control System (TCS) is a extended function of ESP system. During starting off or rapidly acceleration, drive wheels may slip. In case of on a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause dangerous. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

■ Hill-start Assist Control System (HAC)

Hill-start Assist Control System (HAC) can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, Hill-start Assist Control System (HAC) adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, Hill-start Assist Control System (HAC) automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1 to 2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

■ Emergency Brake Assist System (EBA)

Emergency Brake Assist System (EBA) is a extended function of Brake Assist System (EBA) to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, Emergency Brake Assist System (EBA) operates: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, Emergency Brake Assist System (EBA) quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock braking system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

■ Emergency stop light

Emergency stop light can turn on hazard light in emergency braking to warn vehicle behind. After sensing that vehicle forward is applying emergency braking, vehicle behind can properly apply braking to prevent rear-end collision. After emergency braking is finished or engine start stop switch is turned to OFF mode, hazard light will turn off automatically.

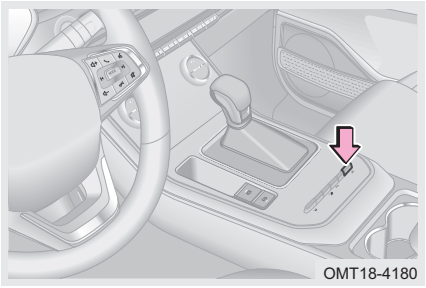
■ Start assist function (if equipped)

Torque output when vehicle starts off is increased to easily start off.

4-7. Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) can help vehicle pass through steep road safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down a steep slope, for vehicle with automatic transmission, speed control range is 10-35 km/h, and for vehicle with manual transmission speed control range is 14-35 km/h; when initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.


OMT18-4180

Turning on Hill Descent Control System (HDC):

With engine start stop switch in ON mode and vehicle speed ⩽ 60 km/h, press HDC switch to turn on HDC, and green indicator " " comes on.

Turning off Hill Descent Control System (HDC):

- With HDC ON, press HDC switch to turn off HDC, and green indicator " " goes off.
- When vehicle speed is ＞ 60 km/h, Hill Descent Control System (HDC) will turn off.

CAUTION

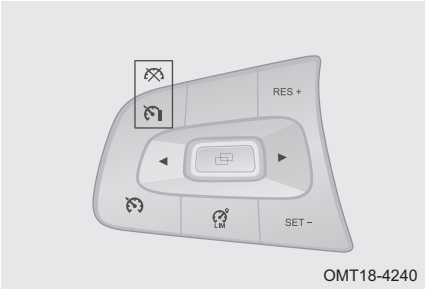
- ON speed range of Hill Descent Control System (HDC) is below 60 km/h.
- When the HDC system is working, ABS will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- Before entering steep road, set HDC system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC system is to actively apply the braking force through the ESP work. The system will have a hydraulic operation sound when working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the ESP system fails, the HDC function cannot be turned on. Contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When HDC system is working, the driver should be ready to take over and control the vehicle at any time. Because the system can be turned off automatically due to system overheat or the ESP system malfunction in addition to pressing button. At this time, driver should control vehicle speed instead of HDC system.

4-8. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System

Constant speed cruise system can maintain the speed set by driver.

■ Constant speed cruise system button



Cruise button

Turn on/off constant speed cruise system.

/ CANCEL button

Temporarily exit cruise.

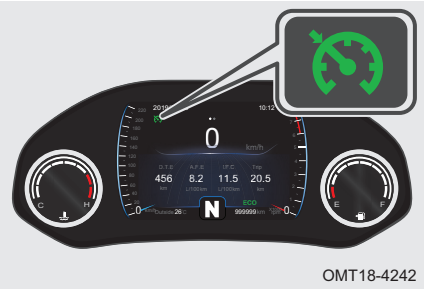
RES/+ RES/+ button

Resume constant speed cruise and adjust speed value.

SET/- SET/- button

Set constant speed cruise and active speed limit and adjust speed value.

■ Entering constant speed cruise system



OMT18-4242

1. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, and indicator " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " comes on;
2. In pre-cruising process, if vehicle speed is within 40-150 km/h, press " SET/- " button again to set current speed as cruise speed to enter cruising state, and indicator " CRUISE ON 45 km/h " comes on.

■ Exiting constant speed cruise system

- Press " " button to exit cruising state, and indicator " CRUISE ON 45 km/h " goes off.
- Press " " / " " button to exit cruising state, and indicator " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " blinks.
- If brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission) is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising process, it will exit cruising state and indicator " CRUISE CANCEL --- km/h " comes on.

■ Setting constant speed cruise system vehicle speed

Press " RES/+ " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Press and hold " RES/+ " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Press " SET/- " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Press and hold " SET/- " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

■ Under any of the following situations, do not use constant speed cruise system. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control and could cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

During emergency towing.

In heavy traffic.

On winding roads.

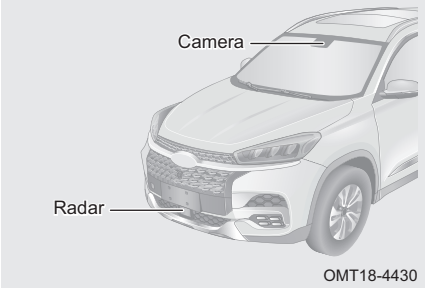
On roads with sharp curves.

On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.

Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down a steep hill.

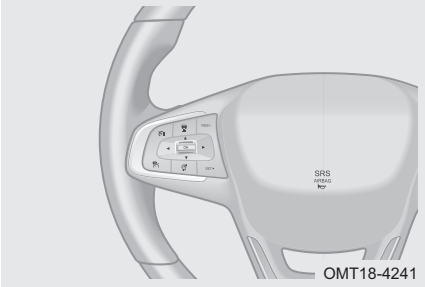
Adaptive Cruise Control System (If Equipped)

Adaptive cruise control system can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.



Adaptive cruise control system, Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW) share a radar and a camera sensor. While some configurations only are equipped with radar and without camera sensor.

■ Adaptive cruise



Following clearance adjusting button
Adjust the following clearance.

Adaptive cruise control system button
Turn on/off adaptive cruise control system.

Temporarily exit cruise button
Temporarily exit cruise status.

Active speed limit LIM button
Turn on/off active speed limit.

RES/+ RES/+ button
Resume the adaptive cruise control system and adjust speed value.

SET/- SET/- button
Enter adaptive cruise control system, active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ

- Adaptive cruise control system and active speed limit share SET/-, RES/+.
- When there is a vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, and driving speed is no higher than vehicle set speed, adaptive cruise control system will control your vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, or there is a vehicle and driving speed is higher than set vehicle, your vehicle drives at the set speed.

■ Entering adaptive cruise control system



OMT18-4243

1. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode, press "" button to enter pre-cruising state " " indicator comes on;
2. In pre-cruising process, if vehicle speed is within 30 - 150 km/h, press "SET/-" button again to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " indicator comes on;
   Depress brake pedal and press " SET/-" button with vehicle stationary, release brake pedal within 3 seconds (depress accelerator pedal slightly if the time exceeds 3 seconds) to enter cruising state, " " indicator comes on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h;

READ

- ACC is exited when turning on active speed limit function.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press " SET/- " button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system", driver depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exiting adaptive cruise control system

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC will exit:

- Depress brake pedal.
- Driver door is opened.
- Driver seat belt is not fastened.
- Pull up electric parking button.
- Press "  " button.
- Hill Descent Function (HDC) is turned on.
- Electronic Stability Program (ESP) operates.
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) operates.
- Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) operates.
- Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is not turned on.
- Shift lever is in a position other than D position.
- Driver depress accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that can exit function resuming, press " 

" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Adaptive cruise control system activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time, ACC can be activated:

- Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
- Driver door is closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- Shift lever is in D position.
- Parking brake is not applied.
- HDC is not turned on.
- ESP is turned on.
- ESP is not activated.
- ABS is not activated.

■ Adaptive cruise control system speed setting

Press "RES/+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press " RES/+ " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Press " SET/- " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press " SET/- " button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For adaptive cruise control system, the lowest speed setting is 30 km/h and the highest speed setting is 150 km/h.
- Speed will be lower than set speed when driving uphill, speed will be higher than set speed slightly when driving downhill.

■ Always read the following precautions when ACC is used:

- ACC can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC may select the vehicle as following target.
- Adaptive cruise control system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
- When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
- When adaptive cruise control system function is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator comes on. At this time, adaptive cruise control system function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- During ACC controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
- ACC can only realize limited brake, if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, ACC may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.

- Driver should adjust the following clearance from vehicle ahead based on traffic flow and weather condition and is responsible for ensuring the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC may not recognize vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC should be turned off.
- ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition, It is not recommend for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC in curve, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed in ACC mode due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
- During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, adaptive cruise control system may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
- Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. System performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

■ Following clearance

Press "  " button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into three levels, "Minimum Clearance", "Standard Clearance" and "Maximum Clearance".

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, ESP continuously performs braking and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

⚠ WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process;

■ Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to overtake set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

■ Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- During entering into curve, due to limitation of detection target for radar sensor, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

■ Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

- If vehicle ahead starts within 3 seconds, the vehicle also starts automatically.
- If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver need to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.
- When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfasten seat belt or open driver door, EPB is activated automatically and parking.
- When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the vehicle will exit ACC, and EPB will be activated automatically and parking.

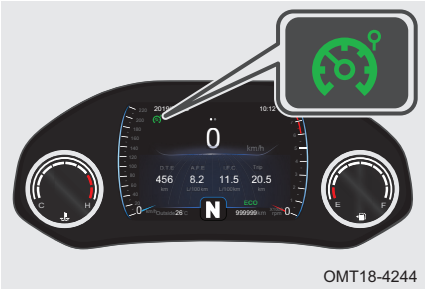
⚠ WARNING

During following vehicle ahead, "  " is green. If it turns to gray, indicating front target has been lost in ACC mode, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Active Speed Limit (If Equipped)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

■ Entering active speed limit



OMT18-4244

1. Turn engine start stop switch to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-speed limit state, and indicator " LIMIT km/h " comes on;
2. With vehicle not started or vehicle speed ＜ 30 km/h, press " SET/- " button to enter speed limit state and indicator " LIMIT ON 30 km/h " comes on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h;
3. In speed limit process, if vehicle speed is within 30-200 km/h, press " SET/- " button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, and indicator " LIMIT ON 30 km/h " comes on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

- Press " " button to exit speed limit state, and indicator " LIMIT ON 30 km/h " goes off.
- Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-speed limit state and indicator " LIMIT CANCEL km/h " comes on.
- Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state and indicator " CRUISE CANCEL km/h " comes on.

■ Setting active speed limit

Press " RES/+ " button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Press and hold " RES/+ " button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h.

Press " SET/- " button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Press and hold " SET/- " button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will

decrease by 5 km/h.

■ Active speed limit overtaking state

● Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, and indicator " LIMIT --- km/h " comes on.

● After overtaking

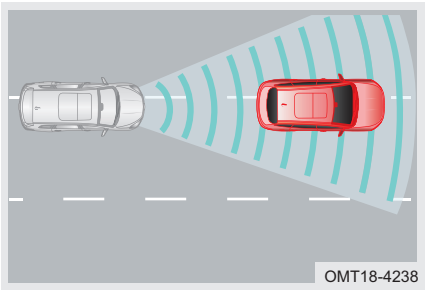
After overtaking, if vehicle speed is more than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state and indicator " LIMIT --- km/h " comes on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state and indicator " LIMIT ON 30 km/h " comes on.

4-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assist and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic.


OMT18-4238

TJA/ICA (if equipped) is turned on by audio system, ACC is turned on automatically at the same time, " " gray indicator comes on. When all ACC activation conditions are met, press " SET/- " button, ACC is activated firstly, meanwhile, front camera detect if there are lane lines or vehicle targets, when activation conditions are met, " " green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

TJA is used when speed is ＜ 60 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA is used when speed is 60 km/h-150 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

■ TJA/ICA may not be activated in the following conditions:

- Any exiting condition for ACC exists.
- Too wide or too narrow lane.
- Too small lane curve radius.
- Lane line is not detected.
- Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
- Hands off steering wheel.
- Turn signal lights are turned on.
- Hazard warning light is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is lower than 1 km/h.

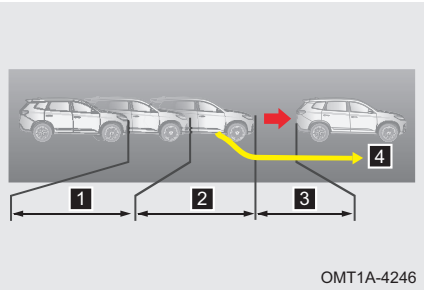
■ For using TJA/ICA, please read the following precautions carefully:

- TJA/ICA is driving assist system, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.
- TJA/ICA does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Diver prepares control vehicle anytime to ensure safety under the conditions of turning, crossing, merging into one lane and vehicle ahead cutting.
- TJA/ICA performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line definition, with significant performance degradation or even loss of function in the case of backlight, sunset, nighttime, road surface covered by snow and ice, and unclear lane lines due to surface worn.
- When TJA/ICA is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator comes on, at this time, TJA/ICA function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver has the responsibility to ensure control of vehicle at any time.

4-10. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)

When vehicle is about to impact vehicle ahead or pedestrian, AEB and FCW work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



1. Start pre-warning before impacting.
2. Start braking partly before impacting.
3. Start emergency braking before impacting.
4. If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

- FCW and safety distance warning can be set in audio system (For details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).
- Some configurations only work on vehicle targets, not pedestrians or cyclists.

CAUTION

- When vehicle speed is < 30 km/h, front collision warning system does not send an alarm. When vehicle speed is > 85 km/h, front collision warning system does not send an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 53 km/h for static vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 80 km/h for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 64 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Driver need to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB does not work.
- Turn on ESP, FCW, AEB, otherwise, FCW and AEB do not work.
- " " yellow indicator comes on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver need to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stopped.
- During AEB is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal firmly, AEB will exit.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle targets that can be detected by AEB include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some restructured vehicles (such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis), AEB has certain limitations in detecting.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). AEB regards pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane as target, but AEB does not regard pedestrians who walk longitudinally in the lane, walk on a curve, or is blocked by other objects.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. Automatic emergency braking system does not regard an oncoming cyclist as target.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process;
- Automatic emergency braking system is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and the system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or do not work for a variety of reasons.
  AEB is only a driving assist system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range. Therefore, driver must control vehicle and operate as needed in the whole driving process.

■ For using AEB, please read the following precautions carefully:

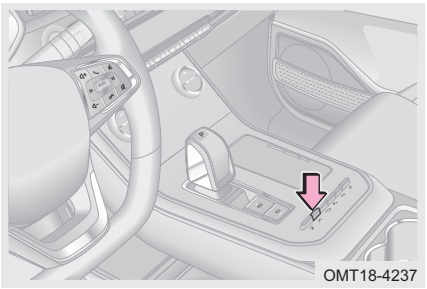
- AEB can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
- AEB does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, incoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
- System performance may be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
- Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when AEB is triggered.
- When AEB is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator comes on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, FCW and AEB should be turned off.

- When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended that customer turns off FCW and AEB, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
- In some special circumstances, AEB may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the track of the road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
- Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.
- Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect AEB normal operation. AEB function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

4-11. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System

Lane assist system includes LDW and LKA, which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.


OMT18-4237

LDW and LKA can be switched by the lane assist system switch in auxiliary fascia console if the two systems are equipped simultaneously.

Press lane assist system switch to switch LDW/LKA/OFF circularly.

If there is only LDW, the system can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System"); System will memorize customer operation by default after LDW function is turned on/off by customer.

READ

- System will memorize customer operation after operating lane assist system switch.
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detects white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, rain, snow, fog or high contrast lighting will affect the sensor.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the lane assist system may not operate properly.
- Keep front/left and right cameras free from obstructions, such as bird droppings, insects and ice.

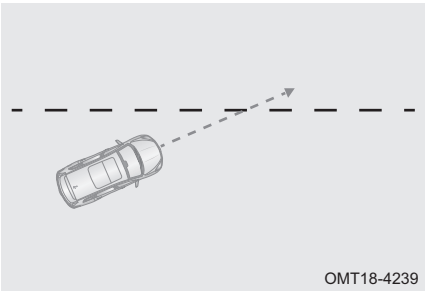
WARNING

- Lane assist system just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor management lane assist system and operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW)

LDW detects lane line by left/right camera. The system sends an alarm when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.

■ Activation conditions for Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



- When speed increases to ⩾ 65 km/h, LDW enters activating mode.
- When speed decreases from over 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters pre-activating; When speed is less than 60 km/h, LDW exits after 3 seconds.

READ

LDW sensitivity adjustment can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

■ Lane departure warning system (LDW） indicator

- When LDW enters pre-activating mode, "  " gray indicator comes on.
- When LDW enters activating mode, "  " green indicator comes on.
- When LDW operates, "  " yellow indicator blinks.
- When LDW is malfunctioning, "  " yellow indicator comes on.

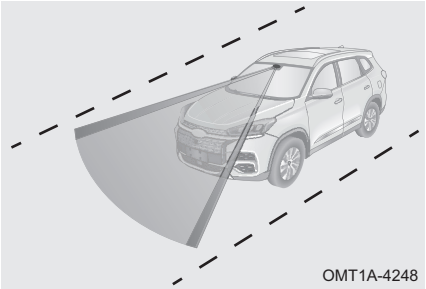
■ The function will be exited or not activated even if LDW is enabled in following conditions:

- When changing lanes.
- When turning with high speed.
- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
- When turning on hazard warning light.
- When turning on departure side turn signal light.
- When driving on curve with small turning radius.
- When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA)

LKA detects lane line by front view camera. When lane lines on left and right sides are detected by system, system applies corrective steering intervention to keep vehicle in the middle of lane.

■ LKA activation conditions



- When vehicle speed is 60 km/h or more, LKA is activated.
- When vehicle speed decreases from over 60 km/h to 55 km/h, LKA enters pre-activating mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- Driver performs an active control when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs an active control when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, heavy traffic road).
- Driver performs an active control when meeting a large curve.

■ Lane keep assist system (LKA) indicator

- When LKA enters pre-activating mode, " " gray indicator comes on.
- When LKA enters activating mode or operates, " " green indicator comes on.
- When LKA is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator comes on.

■ The function will be exited or not activated even if LKA is enabled in following conditions:

- When changing lanes.
- When turning on turn signal light.
- When braking with excess force.
- When turning with high speed.
- When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
- When turning on hazard warning light.
- LKA can recognize that driver does not operate steering wheel for a while.
- Steering wheel is operated by driver when LKA applies corrective steering intervention.

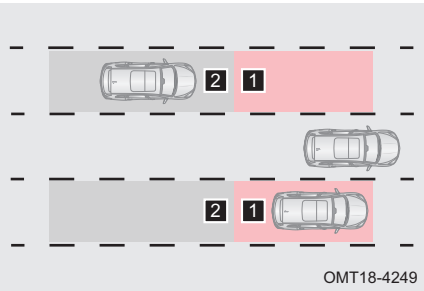
■ Do not use LKA in any of the following situations. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control and could cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- When driving on low-quality section.
- When driving on road construction site.
- When driving on roads with more curves.
- During night and when the surrounding light is dark.
- When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
- In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

4-12. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA)

BSD/LCA is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system extends Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system, etc.



1 Detection area of BSD.

2 Vehicle approach alarm, approaching/overtaking vehicle area.

■ BSD activation conditions

- When vehicle speed is 15 km/h or more, BSD enters activating mode.
- When vehicle speed decreases from over 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD enters pre-activating mode.

■ Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system indicator

- When BSD operates, " " green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.
- When there is a fault in BSD, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Blind spot detection system (BSD) alarm display

- Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level

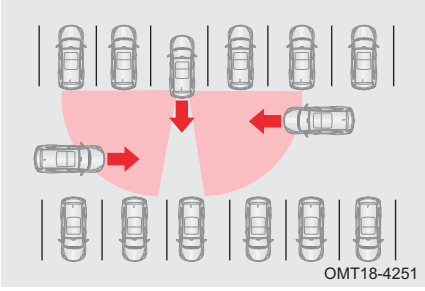
alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on rear mirror remains on, " " green indicator comes on.

- Level II: On base of level I, turn signal lights on the same side are activated. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on rear mirror blinks, alarm sounds and instrument cluster ADAS displays alarm screen.

READ

- When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON mode, BSD turns on by default.
- BSD can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

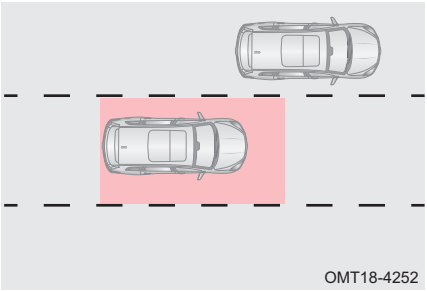


When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON mode and vehicle is backed up (shift lever is shifted into R position), BSD system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, " " yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

CAUTION

- Even if vehicle is equipped with BSD, do not neglect and use caution when driving.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor management system and operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- BSD will send light alarm when it senses objects that are stationary on road or roadside (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles).
- When towing or attaching accessories to vehicle rear (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off BSD. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if driving on snowy road for a long time, system may not operate.

Door Open Warning System (DOW)



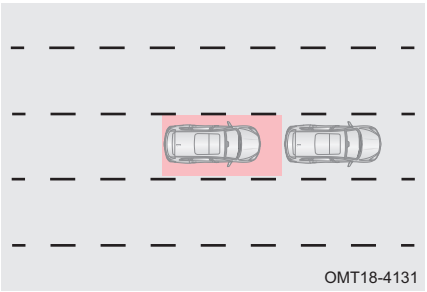
When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if BSD detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/ occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

■ Door Open Warning System (DOW) alarm display

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror comes on, indicator on door trim panel comes on.

Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Rear Collision Warning System (RCW)



With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed ⩾ 15 km/h, if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, hazard light flashes, alarm sounds, instrument cluster ADAS displays alarm screen.

READ

RCW can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

■ DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When the vehicle speed is higher than 0.
2. After turning vehicle power to OFF mode for 5 minutes.
3. When turning vehicle power to OFF mode and enters fortifying mode within 5 minutes.

4-13. Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC)

With ENGINE START STOP switch ON, turn headlight combination switch to " AUTO " position. When the low beam light is automatically turned on, pull the headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release. When the vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h, the white indicator " " comes on, and the IHC is activated; At this time, the IHC automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions, such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent headlight function (IHC) is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator " " goes out. Pull the headlight combination switch away from the steering wheel side and release, the IHC is reactivated.

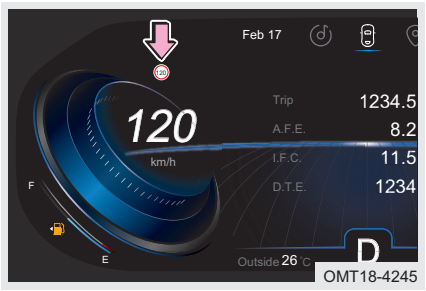
READ

- When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.
- Intelligent headlight function (IHC) needs to be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

4-14. Speed Limit Assist System (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road ahead and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



■ Speed limit assist system display

After speed limit sign is recognized by SLA, " (120) " indicator flashes if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

■ SLA may not be able to recognize:

- Faded signs.
- Signs on winding roads.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- High signs on highway.
- Signs that are covered fully/partly, or that in a hidden position.
- Signs that are covered by frost, snow and/or dust fully or partly.

READ

SLA can be set in audio system (for details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

WARNING

Speed limit assist function based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.

4-15.Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire pressure is too low/high or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.



OMT18-4250

Steering wheel left combination button " ◀ " /right combination button " ▶ " can be used to switch to tire pressure display screen (for details, refer to relevant section in Instrument Cluster).

When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster.

When vehicle drives at speed of ＞ 30 km/h for ＞ 45 s, tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster in real-time.

> READ
>
> Common radio interference sources include vehicle power, driving recorder, air purifier, entrance guard card, remote control, cell phone base station, TV tower, etc.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Malfunction Warning



OMT18-4260

When vehicle speed is ＞ 30 km/h, if Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after 10 minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning. Warning light blinks 75 s and then it remains on. At this time, " Abnormal Tire Pressure, Check TPMS" is displayed and disappear 5 s later but can be checked on query screen.

■ Possible causes of TPMS system malfunction warning:

- Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
- Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting proper operation of tire pressure monitoring system.
- Tire pressure sensor or other components have been damaged. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as necessary.
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) may not operate due to radio interference. Tire pressure monitoring system may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHZ).
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.

■ Low pressure warning



OMT18-4270

- When engine start stop switch is turned to ON from OFF, and tire pressure is < 1.8 bar, system will warn for low pressure.
- When vehicle tire pressure is < 1.8 bar and drives at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, system will warn for low pressure.

During low pressure warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current pressure value will be displayed and tire pressure warning indicator will remain on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 2.3 bar as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven for a period of time at a speed greater than 30 km/h, the low pressure warning will be canceled automatically.

READ

- Low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear. Serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout.
- When tire pressure is too low, inspect causes of air leakage. Contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

■ High temperature warning



OMT18-4280

With engine start stop switch turned from OFF to ON and tire temperature ＞ 85°C, if vehicle is driven for a period of time at a speed greater than 30 km/h, system will warn for high temperature.

During high temperature warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current temperature value will be displayed and tire pressure warning indicator will remain on.

When high temperature warning occurs, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Otherwise, accidents may be caused.

When tire temperature is below 80°C, if driving vehicle at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, high temperature warning cancels automatically.

CAUTION

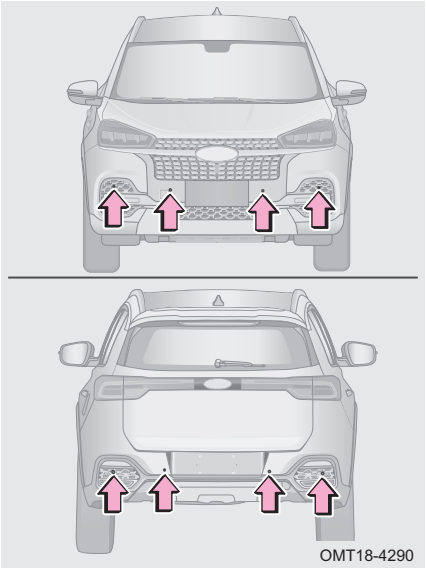
When tire temperature is too high, it cannot be cooled by pouring cold water, which may damage the tire, causing an accident. Contact the Chery authorized service station as soon as possible for inspection and repair as needed.

4-16.Reversing Radar System

Reversing Radar System

Reversing radar assist system adopts digital sensors to detect distance on base of ultrasonic technology. It can presents driver the distance between front/rear of the vehicle and objects, and give voice prompts and image display to reduce personnel injury and vehicle damage caused by forward and backward driving.

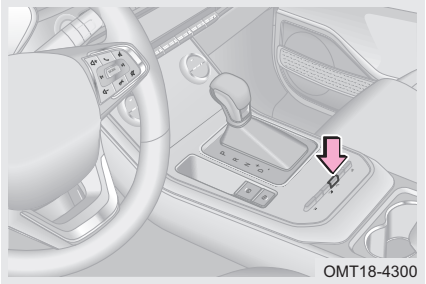
Reversing radar assist system consists of radar sensor, controller and display alarm device.



When engine start stop switch is turned to ON and shifting the shift lever to R, the reversing radar system can be turned on. When radar sensor detects an obstacle, the information display area in instrument cluster will display the corresponding distance information and buzzer will sound.

READ

- When front radar is activated, shift the shift lever to P or apply electric parking, instrument cluster only displays arc information without alarm sound.
- Shift the shift lever to R to activate the reversing radar system (regardless of the reversing radar system switch is turned on or off before shifting the shift lever to R), when shifting to other gears, the parking radar system still works.



- When engine start stop switch is turned to ON mode, press parking radar switch to activate reversing radar system. Each time the reversing radar system is activated, if the reversing radar system is normal, it alarms for 0.5 s, reversing radar system status indicator comes on and system starts detecting distance at the same time.
- When vehicle is traveling forward and the reversing radar system is activated, when vehicle speed is > 15 km/h, the reversing radar system front and rear sensors stop working. If vehicle speed is < 15 km/h, the reversing radar system does not recover, the reversing radar system can be turned on/off by touching parking radar switch.
- If there are malfunctions in parking radar system, it will sound 2s in long tone, and then keep displaying failure information until it is solved.

■ System information display (if equipped with front 4-sensor)

When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, the information display area in instrument cluster will display the corresponding distance information and buzzer will sound:

Distance/cm	Meter Display Type				
	Front Left	Front Left Center	Front Right Center	Front Right	Note
⩽ 35					Sound continuously
40 ⩽ L ⩽ 60					Sound at 4 Hz
65 ⩽ L ⩽ 90					Sound at 2 Hz

■ Malfunction warning display (if equipped with front 4-sensor)

Fault Sensor	Meter Display Type	Sound Prompt	Note
Front Left Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Front left Side Radar Sensor"
Front Left Center Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Front Left Middle Side Radar Sensor"
Front Center Right Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Front Right Middle Side Radar Sensor"
Front Right Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Front Right Side Radar Sensor"

■ System information display (rear 4-sensor)

When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, the information display area in instrument cluster will display the corresponding distance information and buzzer will sound:

Distance/cm	Meter Display Type				
	Rear Left	Rear Center Left	Rear Center Right	Rear Right	Note
⩽ 35					Sound continuously
40 ⩽ L ⩽ 60					Sound at 4 Hz
65 ⩽ L ⩽ 90					Sound at 2 Hz
95 ⩽ L ⩽ 150					Sound at 1 Hz

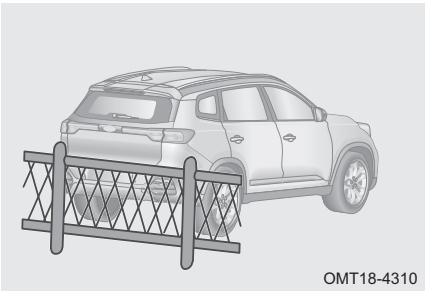
■ Malfunction warning display (rear 4-sensor)

Fault Sensor	Meter Display Type	Sound Prompt	Note
Rear Left Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Rear Left Side Radar Sensor"
Rear Left Center Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Rear Left Middle Side Radar Sensor"
Rear Center Right Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Rear Right Middle Side Radar Sensor"
Rear Right Sensor		Sound continuously for 2 s	Malfunction information: "Check Rear Right Side Radar Sensor"

Usage Instructions

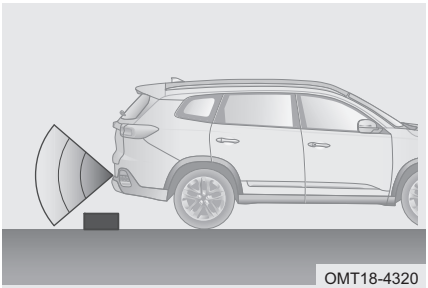
Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.

When reversing in following conditions, buzzer may not sound even if radar sensor is approaching obstacle:



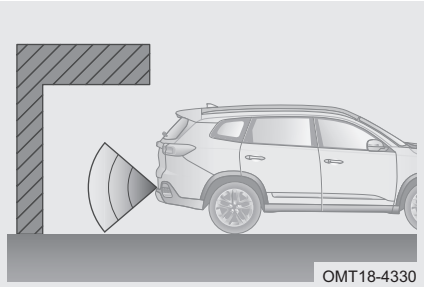
OMT18-4310

Radar sensors cannot detect thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc.

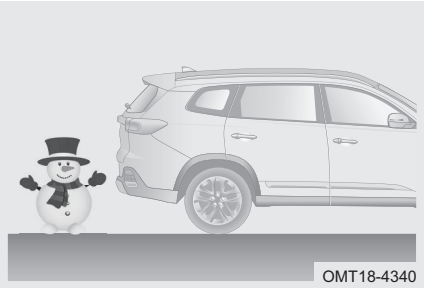


OMT18-4320

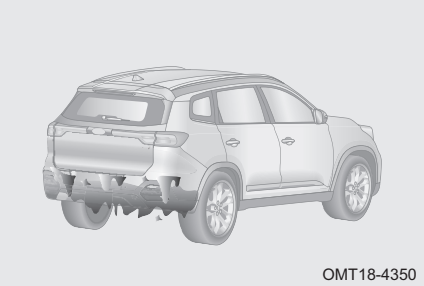
Radar sensors cannot detect low objects such as rocks, etc.


OMT18-4330

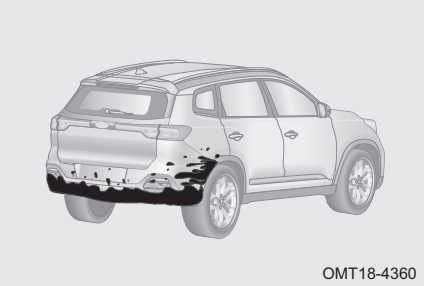
Radar sensors may not detect objects that are higher than bumper.


OMT18-4340

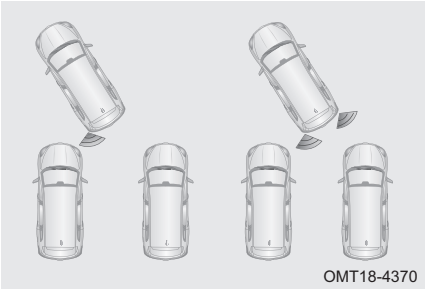
Radar sensors cannot detect objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves such as soft snow, cotton, sponge, etc.


OMT18-4350

When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.


OMT18-4360

When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.

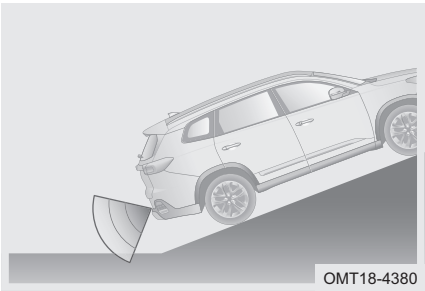

OMT18-4370

If obstacles are detected by more sensors, the distances between sensors and obstacles are displayed on instrument cluster simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

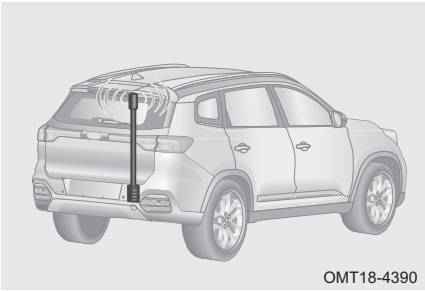
⚠ CAUTION

- For obstacles out of the detection range, radar sensors do not give a warning.
- When moving, be aware the reversing radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

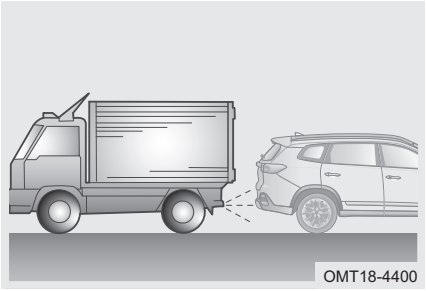
When reversing in following conditions, reversing radar sensors may provide wrong information:


OMT18-4380

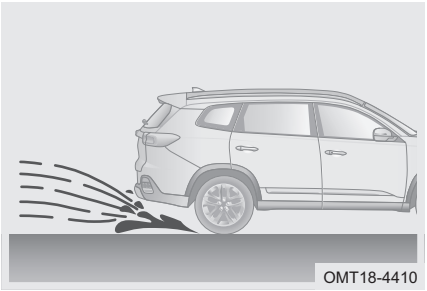
When vehicle is on a steep slope.


OMT18-4390

When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.


OMT18-4400

When there is loud noise near the vehicle, such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.


OMT18-4410

When driving in jelly-like snow or in rain.

Cleaning Reversing Radar Sensor

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of the reversing radar sensor.


OMT18-4420

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may cause damage to the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, or it may be resulting in abnormal operation.

If the buzzer does not sound when reversing, please check the followings:

- If there is foreign matter on the surface of radar sensor.
- Radar sensors cannot detect wires and fences. Check if radar sensor surface is frozen.
- If the vehicle has been parked for a long time in hot or cold weather.
- If cause cannot be found, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

5-1. Audio and Entertainment System
Audio Control Panel 228
Media 230
Bluetooth Phone 230
Cloudrive 230
Electronic Version of Audio Owner's Manual 231
Setting 231
Phone-link (If Equipped) 233
Audio Button 239
5-2. Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)
Driving Recorder (DVR) 239
5-3. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)
Wireless Charging 243
5-4. Reversing View Monitor (If Equipped)
Reversing View Monitor and Vehicle Guideline 244
5-5. Panoramic View Monitor (If Equipped)
Panoramic View Monitor 246
Camera Layout 247
Turning On and Off Panoramic View Monitor System 247
3D Panoramic View 248
Switching between single side view and panoramic view 249
3D Left/Right Side View 249
Rear Magnified View 250
Static/Dynamic Reverse Guideline 250
Camera Diagnostic Function 250
5-6. Air Conditioning System
Electric Air Conditioning System (If Equipped) 252
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (electric A/C) 258
Dual Automatic Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 260
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (Automatic Air Conditioning) 268
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 270
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) 271
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 272
Anion Function (If Equipped) 273
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) 273
Blower Advanced ON and Delayed OFF Function (If Equipped) 273
Center Armrest Refrigeration Function (If Equipped) 274
Mode Adjustment 275
Air Outlets Airflow Control 277
5-7. Power Outlet
Power Outlet 278
5-8. Cup Holders
Cup Holders 280
5-9. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 281
5-10. Assist Grips and Rear Center Armrest
Assist Grips 281
Center Armrest (Second Row) 282
5-11. Storage Space

5-1. Audio and Entertainment System

Audio Control Panel



1 Multimedia

Click to enter multimedia screen, including radio, music, pictures and video.

2 Telephone

Click to enter Bluetooth phone, including recent calls, dialing, contacts and Bluetooth settings.

3 Cloudrive

Click to enter Cloudrive screen, including each application menu in system.

4 A/C menu quick button

Air conditioning system operation screen can be quickly entered by sliding down the A/C menu quick button.

5 Power button

Turn on/off audio and entertainment system, and restart system by long pressing power button during abnormal operation.

6 Volume - button

Click to decrease the volume.

7 Volume + button

Click to increase the volume.

8 Hazard light switch

Click to turn on the hazard light.

9 Audio main menu button

Click to change to main menu screen.

10 Cloudrive Interconnection button

Click to change to Cloudrive Interconnection screen.

11 Answer button

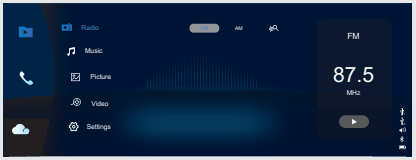
Click to answer the call.

12 Setting button (SET)

Click to enter setting screen, including the settings for each function.

For details about specific operating methods, refer to electronic version of Audio Owner's Manual.

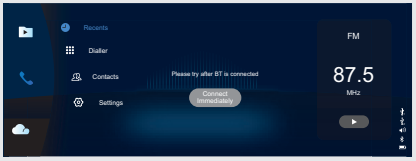
Media



OMT18-5030

Media includes radio, music, pictures and video.

Bluetooth Phone

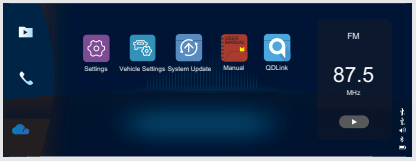


OMT18-5040

Click phone button on main menu to enter phone screen.

For Bluetooth phone function, it is necessary to connect the cellphone Bluetooth to vehicle computer first.

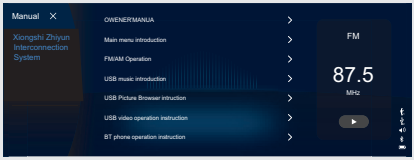
Cloudrive



OMT18-5050

Cloudrive includes Setting, Vehicle Setting, Apple CarPlay, Baidu Car-Life, etc (For details, refer to "Electronic Version of Audio Owner's Manual").

Electronic Version of Audio Owner's Manual



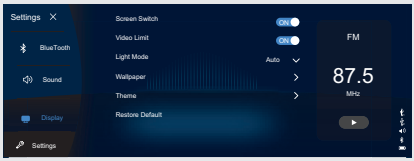
OMT18-5060

Click Cloudrive button on main menu to enter Cloudrive screen.

Click "Owner's Manual" on Cloudrive screen to check the detailed instructions for use of audio head unit system.

Setting

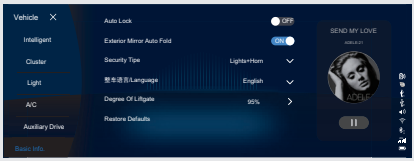
■ Following functions can be set on setting screen:



OMT18-5061

- 【Bluetooth】 Click to enter Bluetooth setting screen, it can be set to Bluetooth connection.
- 【Sound】Click to enter sound setting screen, it can be set to button sound, volume, calling broadcast, default volume, voice broadcast, speed volume, Arkamys sound, sound field setting, sound setting, volume adjustment, default recovery.
- 【Display】Click to enter display screen, it can be set to display switch, video limit switch, display brightness setting, wallpaper setting, theme setting, default recovery.
- 【System】 Click to enter system setting screen, tuner region setting, version information, storage space and factory setting reset.

■ Following functions can be set on vehicle setting screen:



OMT18-5062

- 【Smart Key】: Click to enter smart key screen to set courtesy lights, smart key sensing back door opening, smart key sensing unlock and lock, easy seat access function for driver seat, rear view mirror automatic adjustment on reversing, position memory linked with key.
- 【Meter Setting】: Click to enter the meter setting screen to set overspeed alarm, meter backlight and meter time.

- 【Light Setting】 : Click to enter the light setting screen to set daytime running light, intelligent high beam control, headlight delay and ambient light.
- 【A/C Setting】: Click to enter the A/C setting screen to set blower advancing opening, blower delay closing, automatic defog function.
- 【Auxiliary Drive Setting】 : Click to enter the auxiliary drive setting screen to set blind area monitoring, distance warning system, speed limit assistance, door opening warning, lane departure warning, automatic emergency braking system, traffic congestion assistance system/integrated cruise assistance system and rear approach warning switch.
- 【Vehicle Basic Setting】: Click to enter the vehicle basic setting screen to set automatic locking, outside mirror auto folding, fortifying prompt, language, back door opening degree and EPS steering mode.

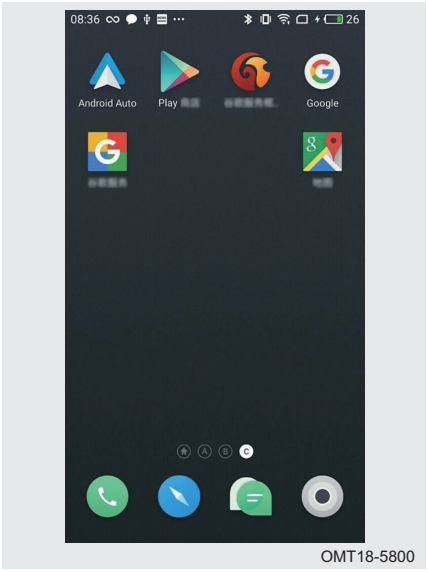
READ

- The settings are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Enter to vehicle setting after switching ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode.
- The ambient light can set different colors according to the sound effect or the switching of driving mode.

Phone-link (If Equipped)

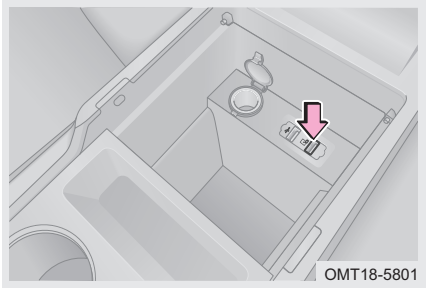
Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method



OMT18-5800

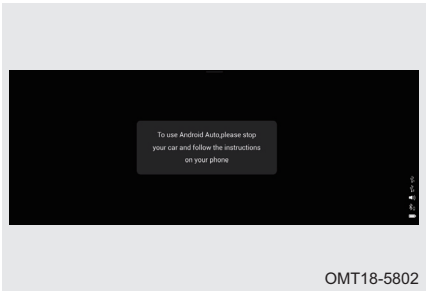
- Install the Google Framework;
- Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.


OMT18-5801

- Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

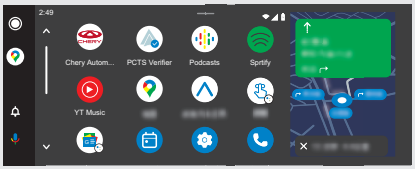
READ

Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function.



OMT18-5802

- If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and pull the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

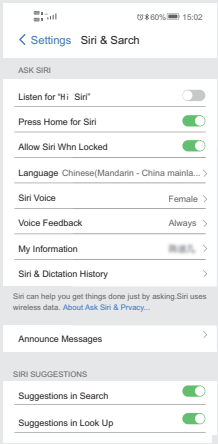


OMT18-5803

- Click "Android Auto" on the head unit APP to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

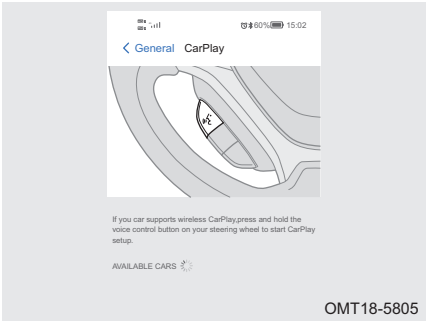
Apple CarPlay (iOS)

Connecting method



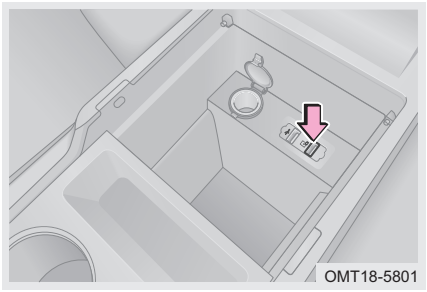
OMT18-5804

- Turn Listen for "Hi Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;



OMT18-5805

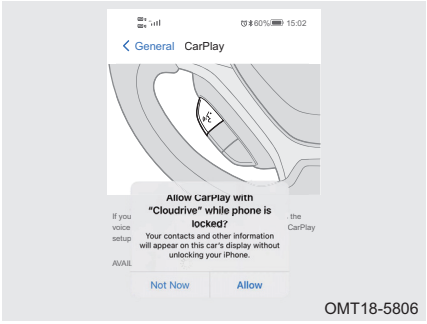
- Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;


OMT18-5801

- Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

READ

Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT18-5806

- Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;



OMT18-5807

- Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

Voice trigger

Short press the " " voice identification button, which will prompt that "Please confirm your phone is connected and press the voice key".

Long press the " " voice identification button to trigger Siri function.

QDlink (Android)

Download method



OMT18-5808

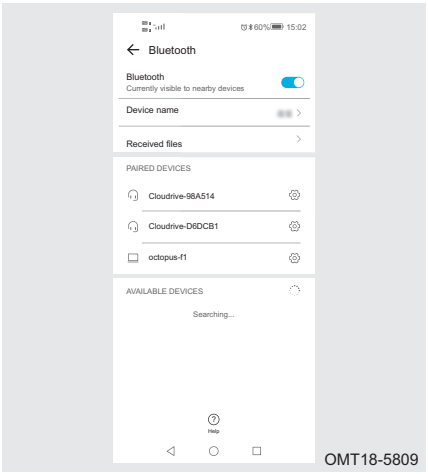
QDLink App is downloaded to your phone by any of the following methods:

- Scan the QDLink QR code to download.
- Scan the Google QR code to download.
- Search and download in Google Play.

READ

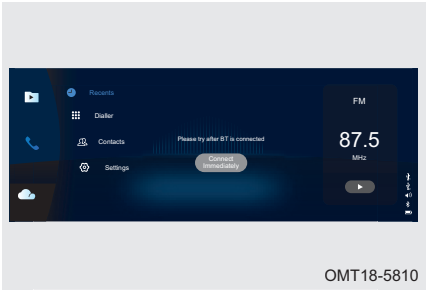
Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissionsin the phone settings.

Connecting method



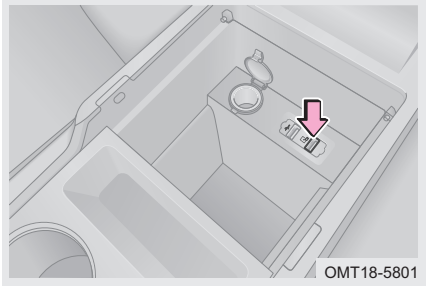
OMT18-5809

- Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of phone;



OMT18-5810

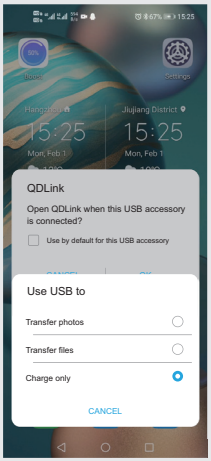
- Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of audio, search and connect device, and Bluetooth pairing request will be popped up on phone;
- Select PAIR on Bluetooth pairing request screen of phone to complete the Bluetooth pairing operation;
- Click the QDLink application;



OMT18-5801

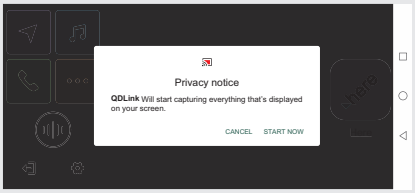
- Connect USB port and phone using original data cable, and USB permission request will be popped up on phone;

READ
Only USB port " ” supports QDlink screencast function.



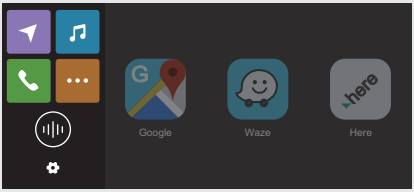
OMT18-5811

- Select Transfer files on USB permission request screen, turn QDLink to ON when connecting USB is agreed, and screencast request screen will be popped up on phone;



OMT18-5812

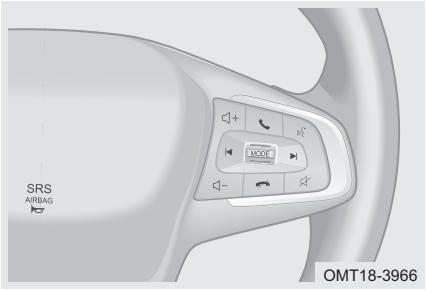
- Select START NOW on screencast request screen of phone;



OMT18-5813

- Enter QDlink screencast screen.

Audio Button



OMT18-3966

Increase volume button
Short press: Increase volume.
Long press: Continuously increase volume.

Decrease volume button
Short press: Decrease volume.
Long press: Continuously decrease volume.

Answer button
Answer the call or enter Bluetooth screen.

Hang up button
Hang up the call.

Short press to enable the local voice recognition function; Long press to enable the Siri function or CarLife voice function.

Audio mute button
Mute the audio.

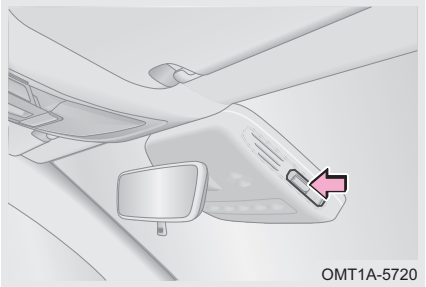
MODE Mode switch button
Mode switch: radio - USB - Bluetooth music - local store music - radio.

Left/Right switch button
Previous/Next track switch in music; Previous/Next radio station switch in radio.

5-2. Driving Recorder (DVR) (If Equipped)

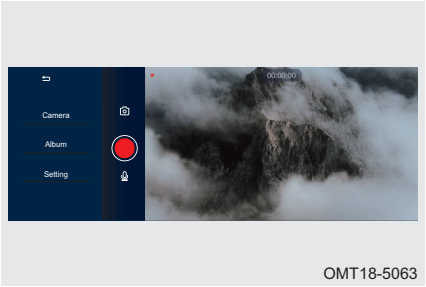
Driving Recorder (DVR)

■ Driving recorder (DVR)


OMT1A-5720

Please insert TF card of Class 10 or above version before power on, and the partition format of the card is FAT 32 or exFAT.

■ Driving recorder connection and display



OMT18-5063

The driving recorder is connected to the audio head unit through Wi-Fi and is displayed and operated on the audio head unit. Click driving recorder application to enter the real-time screen of it. Click the upper left corner to return to the audio main screen and exit the driving recorder screen.

READ

- There is a certain delay in Wi-Fi transmission, so the real-time view displayed by the audio head unit has a certain delay compared with the actual view in front of the vehicle seen by the human eyes.
- The Wi-Fi connection between the audio head unit and driving recorder may be disconnected after exiting the driving recorder. When click the driving recorder application again, it needs to reconnect Wi-Fi. This process will take a certain time. Please wait for a while.

■ Normal recording

Start vehicle, the DVR starts recording, the red dot on top left corner of audio head unit real-time screen flashes, and REC is displayed. And the time in middle of the screen increases by seconds.

The normal recording is recorded and stored in normal video folder by sections. When the normal video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten.

READ

- Click " " on the real-time screen of audio head unit to turn on/off the sound recording, which is off by default.
- Under normal recording, the indicator light of the recorder is blue; Under abnormal conditions, the indicator light of the recorder is red.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the TF card directly during video recording. If TF card is needed to unplug, please pause the recording or stall and turn off DVR before unplugging.

■ Emergency recording

When DVR is in normal operating state, if vehicle is involved in a collision, DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, DVR will automatically record video of 10 seconds before and after the collision.

The emergency recording is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio head unit will prompt with text：DVR emergency video folder is full.

READ

In case of accidental collision, emergency video files are not guaranteed in each collision due to the insufficient collision intensity or other factors. If no emergency video is generated, you can find the video segment when accident occurs in normal video folder.

■ Parking monitoring

In the shutdown mode, in case of collision, the DVR is not damaged and this function is activated, it will turn on and automatically record for 20 seconds, and then turn off.

The parking monitoring is recorded and stored in emergency video folder. When the emergency video folder is full, the earliest recorded video will be automatically overwritten, while the audio head unit will prompt with text: DVR emergency video folder is full.

READ

- The parking monitoring function is on by default and can be turned off by setting.
- When the battery power is lower than a certain voltage value and the parking monitoring function is turned on, the DVR cannot be enabled by vibration.
- In case of accidental collision, DVR recording video is not guaranteed to be enabled every time due to insufficient collision intensity or other factors.

■ Take photos and snapshot

Click "  " to take photos, one photo at each time.

Set the "Mode" button to snapshot through audio head unit system setting, the "Mode" button of the steering wheel combination key can be used to snapshot.

■ Photo/video playback

Click album on the real-time screen of the audio head unit to see the normal video "  " folder, emergency video "  " folder and photo "  " folder in the memory card.

In the normal video or emergency video folder, slide up and down to select video, click it to enter the playback screen to play the video. You can pause, continue, switch to the previous/next video, and delete video.

In the video file list screen, long press a video, a small circle will appear in the top right corner of the video thumbnail, with " √ " indicating that the video is

selected, multiple or single choice is allowed, click delete to delete the selected video. Deleted video is not recoverable.

During video recording, when the overlay switch of driving information is ON, you can see the date, time and driving status when recording this video in the information bar of video playback screen.

> **CAUTION**
>
> In the process of deleting videos or photos, never unplug TF card or cut power off to avoid damaging TF card.

■ Setting



OMT18-5064

You can enter the setting menu screen of the DVR by clicking the setting soft button. The setting items of the DVR include the following contents:

Driving information overlay: ON (default)/OFF.

Recording resolution: 1080P (default), 720P.

Recording time: 1 minute, 3 minutes (default), 5 minutes.

Vibration sensitivity: High, middle (default), low.

Snapshot: Take photo, record a video, take photo + record a video (default).

Wide dynamic: ON (default)/OFF.

Parking monitoring: ON (default)/OFF.

Recorder memory card: Display TF capacity, and TF memory card can be formatted.

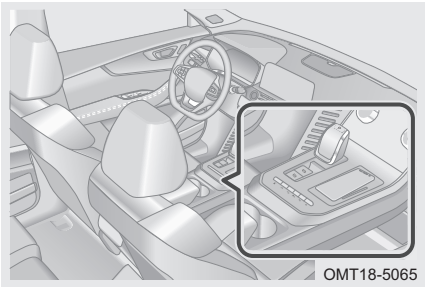
> **READ**
>
> In the process of formatting the memory card and upgrading the software, never unplug the card or cut power off to avoid damaging the memory card or recorder.

5-3. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging

Wireless charging adopts electromagnetic induction technology, with convenience, versatility, novelty and safety, to make you can have a better experience while driving.

■ Wireless charging function


OMT18-5065

While ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to ON mode, the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio displays " ". The audio displays " " after charging is completed.

Wireless charging may not work properly in the following conditions:

- When the temperature in vehicle is higher than 65°C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.
- The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of phone is more than 8 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
- The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays " ".

READ

- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.
- Wireless charging function is set in audio system (for details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).

CAUTION

- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, in order to ensure the identification of vehicle to smart key, there will be a temporary charging shield.
- If your mobile phone doesn't support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of wireless charging patch in the market vary greatly, and frequent use is easy to cause damage (function failure, interface poor contact, metal foreign object recognition failure, etc.).

■ Phone forgetting reminder function

While ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode, if you open driver door with the mobile phone left in wireless charging sensing area, it will sound an alarm for 20 seconds, if you take the phone out within 20 seconds, the alarm will stop.

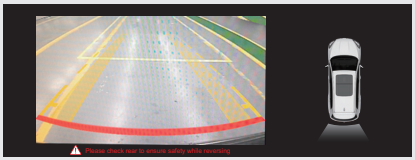
READ

- Phone forgetting reminder function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Phone forgetting reminder function is set in audio system (for details, refer to 5-1. Audio and Entertainment System).

5-4. Reversing View Monitor (If Equipped)

Reversing view monitor system collects the rear view image of vehicle and displays the rear view to the operator by audio system, providing vehicle guideline.

Reversing View Monitor and Vehicle Guideline



OMT18-5190

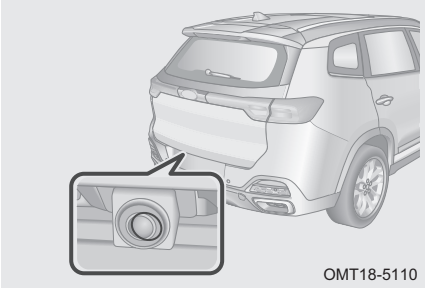
Move shift lever to R to enter reversing view monitor screen, and reversing view monitor screen will display the reversing view monitor and vehicle guideline.

Vehicle guideline varies depending on steering wheel rotation which is used for prejudging the reversing traveling trace.

CAUTION

- Vehicle width guideline and predicting line are wider than the actual line.
- If tire is replaced with a different size, the displayed predicting line is different from the actual line, please use the rear view mirror or check and determine distance to other objects actually.
- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on camera surface.
- Use the distance as a reference (such as on the hill).

■ Installation position of camera



Installation position of rear camera: located center part above rear license plate.

⚠ WARNING

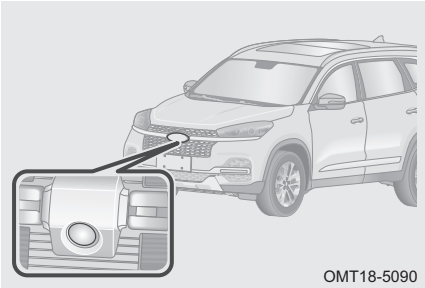
- When reversing, make sure that back door is firmly closed.
- Due to the limited monitoring range, reversing view monitor system cannot view the bottom and corners of bumper.
- Because rear camera use wide-angle lens, object distance displayed on reversing view monitor is different from the actual distance.
- The reversing view monitor is convenient, but it is not a substitute for correct reverse operation. When reversing, be sure to look around to check if the surrounding is safe and reverse slowly.
- When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, do not spray water around the camera, otherwise, water will enter camera and condense on the lens, causing malfunction, fire, or electric shock.
- Never hit the lens. They are precise instrument. Failure to do so may lead to malfunction or damage, causing a fire or electric shock.
- Rear camera lens may enlarge and distort the view, so image on display is different from real object or it cannot reflect the real object accurately, and there is also blind spot and a little delay.
- When reversing, always pay extra attention to surrounding children, small animals and objects, because they cannot always be detected by camera.
- Never distract your attention from surrounding traffic due to images on display.

5-5. Panoramic View Monitor (If Equipped)

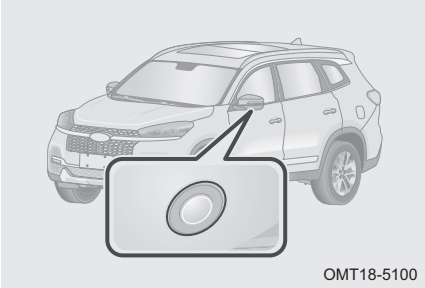
Panoramic View Monitor

Panoramic view monitor collects images from front, rear, left and right of vehicle, splices them into a birds-eye view of vehicle surroundings through image processing algorithm and displayed panoramic image on audio system display, in order to help the driver to intuitively confirm the relative relationship between vehicle and parking space and surrounding obstacle.

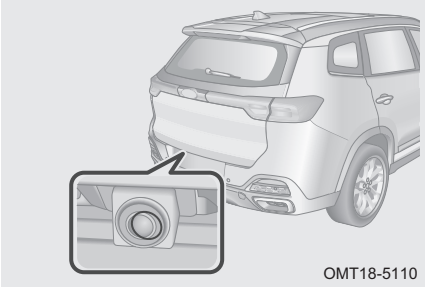
Camera Layout



Installation position of front camera: located at intake grille of front bumper.



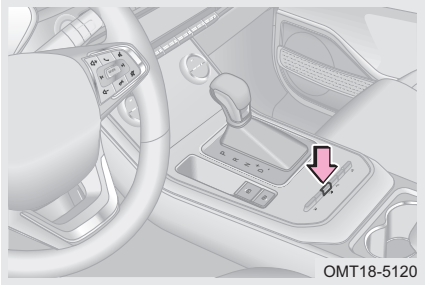
Installation position of left/right cameras: located at the bottom of left/right outside rear view mirrors.



Installation position of rear camera: located at center part above rear license plate.

Turning On and Off Panoramic View Monitor System

■ Entering panoramic view monitor system:



- When engine start stop switch is in ON mode and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, press AVM switch to enter panoramic view monitor system.
- When engine start stop switch is in ON mode and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, shift to reverse gear to enter panoramic view monitor system.

■ Exiting panoramic view monitor system:

- Shift to reverse gear to enter panoramic view monitor system. If vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, it will exit the panoramic view monitor system immediately.
- After the shift lever is shifted out from reverse gear, click the front, rear, left and right button within 5 seconds, it will switch to corresponding view. And recalculate the operation each time the user clicks for 5 seconds, if there is no operation within 5 seconds, it will exit the panoramic view monitor system.
- When engine start stop switch is in ON mode, turn signal lights switch is turned on and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, enter the 3D left/right side view screen automatically. After turn signal lights are turned off, it will exit the panoramic view monitor system immediately.
- When engine start stop switch is in OFF mode, it will exit the panoramic view monitor system immediately.
- When engine start stop switch is in ON mode, enter panoramic view monitor system by shifting the shift lever to a position other than reverse gear, turn off AVM switch to exit the panoramic view monitor system.

⚠ CAUTION

The panoramic view monitor system function provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

3D Panoramic View



OMT18-5211

- While system is in standby state and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, system will enter the 3D panoramic view after receiving reverse signal when user shifts gear to R position.
- When system is in standby state and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, system will enter the 3D panoramic view after user presses the AVM system button.

READ

Default setting for 3D panoramic view function is off, and it can be turned on and off through audio setting. For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System".

Switching between single side view and panoramic view



OMT18-5201

After entering panoramic view screen, touch the front/rear/left/right buttons on the right side, left view display area will respectively switch to the image that taken by the front/rear/left/right cameras. Highlight indicates the direction of single side view.

CAUTION

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

3D Left/Right Side View



OMT18-5221

When engine start stop switch is in ON mode, left/right turn signal lights switch is turned on and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, enter the 3D left/right side view screen automatically. After turn signal lights are turned off, exit the panoramic view mode.

Rear Magnified View



OMT18-5231

When vehicle is in reverse gear, click the rear single side view area, the view will switch to rear magnified view, the horizontal angle of view will expand, click the rear magnified view area again, it will switch to common panoramic view.

CAUTION

With rear view magnified, front, rear, left and right view switch buttons still can be used normally.

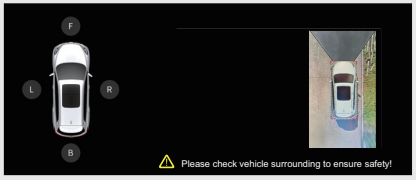
Static/Dynamic Reverse Guideline



OMT18-5271

- When vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h and shift to reverse gear, it will load the rear view dynamic vehicle guideline and wheel track line when entering panoramic screen. When entering panoramic screen with gear position not in R, it will not load the rear view dynamic vehicle guideline and wheel track line.
- When vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h, only the single side front view needs to load the static vehicle guideline if shift to reverse gear or turn on AVM switch. Static vehicle guideline only loads the short distance area (25 cm - 50 cm).

Camera Diagnostic Function



OMT18-5259

When an open circuit or short circuit is detected on one side of the camera, the corresponding panoramic view will display blank screen, click the corresponding side view button, blank screen will be displayed on single side view. At the same time, text and graphic fault information prompts, such as "Check Front Camera" will be displayed on instrument cluster.

WARNING

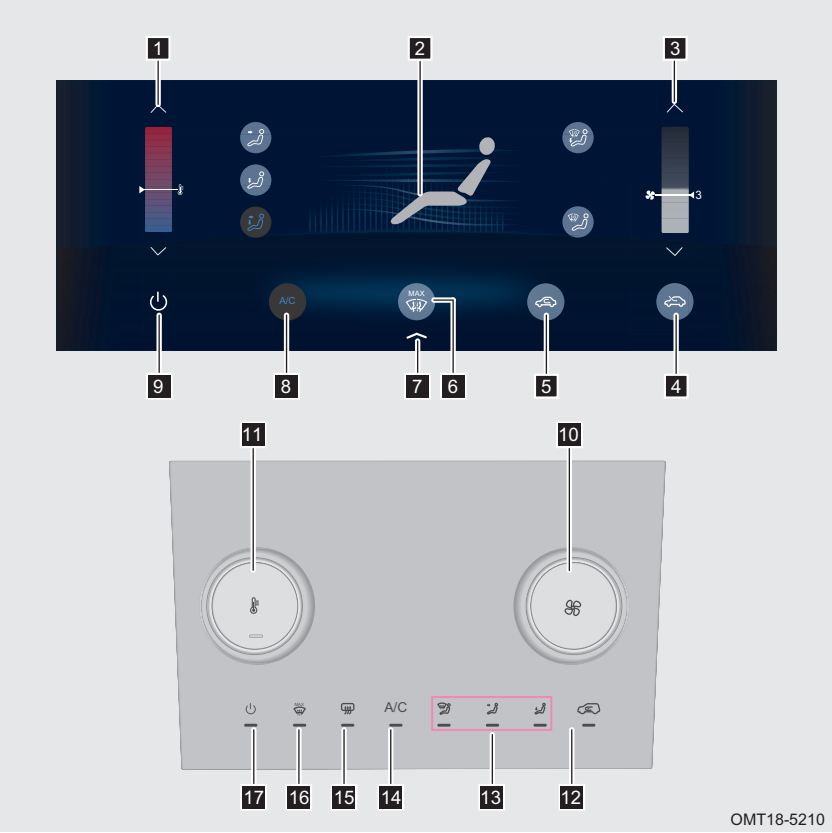
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.
- Do not use the panoramic view monitor when outside rear view mirror is in stowed position. Make sure that back door is firmly closed when using the panoramic view monitor to operate the vehicle.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor is different from the actual distance.
- The camera is installed on the front grille, outside rear view mirror and above the rear license plate. Do not place anything on the camera.

CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Use the displayed route and birds-eye view as a reference. The displayed route and birds-eye view are greatly affected by the number of passengers in the vehicle, fuel quantity, vehicle position and road conditions.

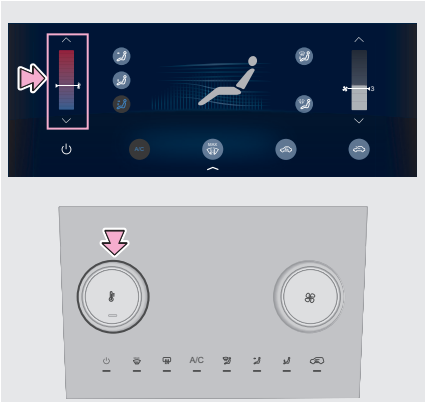
5-6. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning System (If Equipped)



1 Temperature increase/decrease soft button
2 Mode state display
3 Airflow volume increase/decrease soft button
4 Outside recirculated soft button
5 Inside recirculated soft button
6 Front windshield defogging and defrosting soft button
7 A/C screen off soft button
8 A/C switch soft button
9 A/C switch soft button
10 Airflow volume adjustment knob
11 Temperature button
12 Outside/Recirculated air mode button
13 Mode adjustment button
14 A/C button
15 Rear defrosting button
16 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button
17 A/C switch button

■ Temperature adjustment knob

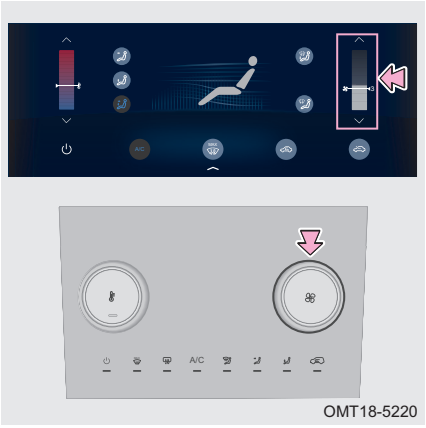


OMT18-5230

Temperature can be adjusted by operating temperature adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

Temperature adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the temperature, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

■ Airflow volume adjustment knob

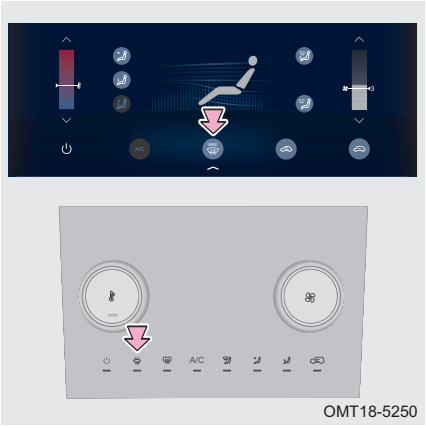


OMT18-5220

Airflow volume can be adjusted by operating airflow volume adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or soft button on display.

Airflow volume adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the airflow volume, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the airflow volume.

■ Front windshield defogging and defrosting button



OMT18-5250

Front windshield defogging and defrosting function can be achieved by using front windshield defogging and defrosting button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting button indicator comes on, indicating that the front windshield defogging and defrosting function is operating. The indicator goes off, indicating that the front windshield defogging and defrosting function stops operating.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting: Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield.

When airflow volume is not in OFF, touching front windshield defogging and defrosting button will turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

Please operate as following to achieve the best defogging/defrosting effect:

1. Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry, if there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off;
2. Air volume adjustment: Max level;
3. Temperature adjustment: Adjust comfortable temperature;
4. Outside/Recirculated air mode switch: Choose outside recirculated mode;
5. Mode adjustment: Touch defrosting button or adjust foot defrosting mode;

6. Refrigeration system ON: A/C indicator comes on.

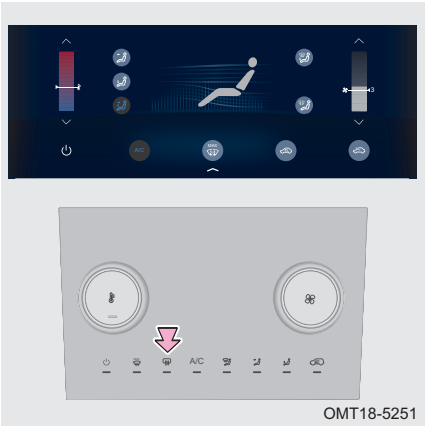
READ

- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Keep A/C on. If A/C is turned off, it will affect the defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Keep outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, it will affect the defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Keep outside air mode and adjust to heat direction, the air outlets on both sides of instrument panel should face the windows on both sides. A/C auxiliary defogging should be turned on when outside temperature is above 0°C.
- If air conditioning fails to cool, it will affect the defogging effect, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and air volume to proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in the winter, otherwise it will make the front windshield fog up quickly.
- Poor visibility of glass will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury, therefore, it is vital for traffic safety to ensure a good vision during driving.

■ Rear defrosting button (If equipped)



OMT18-5251

After starting vehicle, press rear defrosting button and indicator comes on, indicating that the rear defrosting/ outer rear view mirror defrosting function is operating, the indicator goes off, indicating that the rear defrosting or outside rear view mirror defrosting function stops operating.

The function will automatically shut off after the defrosters have operated about 20 minutes.

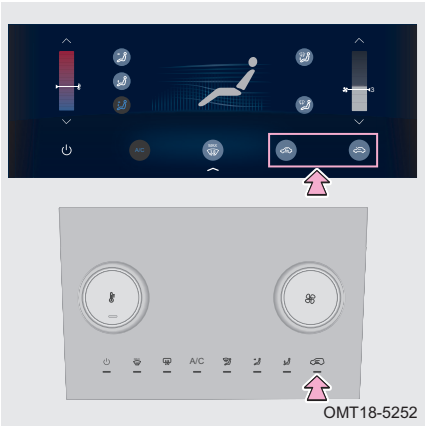
CAUTION

- Make sure that the rear defrosters are turned off when the fog and frost on window surfaces are cleared.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror when the defroster is operating or has just turned off.

■ Outside/Recirculated air mode button



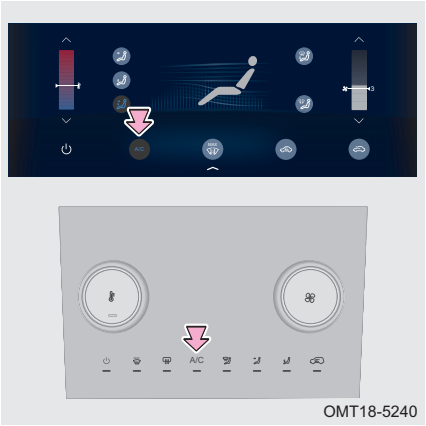
Press the outside/recirculated air mode button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display to switch between recirculated and outside air modes.

Press outside/recirculated air mode button and the indicator comes on, indicating that it is in recirculated air mode. The indicator goes off, indicating that it is in outside air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

- In dusty environment.
- Insulate car interior from exterior smells.
- Preventing outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
- To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.

■ A/C switch

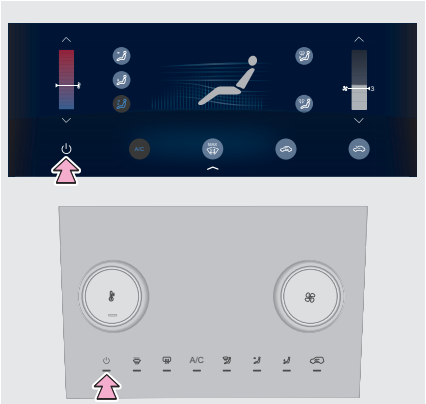


OMT18-5240

Air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating A/C switch on air conditioning control panel or A/C soft button on the display.

The A/C switch indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is turned on. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

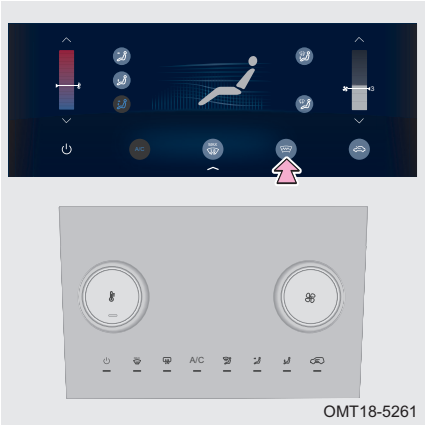
■ A/C switch button



OMT18-5260

The A/C system can be turned off by operating A/C switch button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

■ Front - Windshield Heating (If equipped)

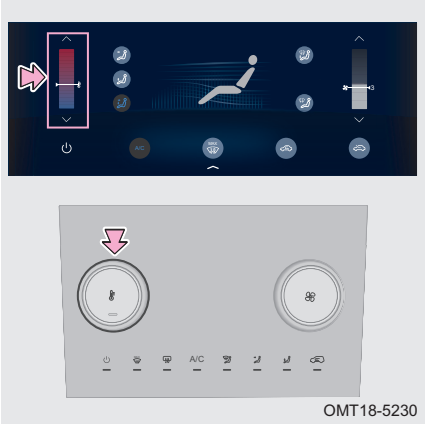


OMT18-5261

Press touch button, turn on / and off the function.

Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (electric A/C)



OMT18-5230

Temperature can be adjusted by operating temperature adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

Temperature adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the temperature, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

When the engine is working:

1. Turn on the air conditioning compressor (A/C indicator comes on) and adjust airflow volume knob;
2. Temperature can be adjusted by operating temperature adjustment knob (turning counterclockwise indicates cooling) on A/C control panel or soft button on the display;
3. Mode adjustment: Face mode;
4. Outside/Recirculated air mode adjustment: When ambient temperature is above 30°C, recirculated air mode is selected.

Please operate as following to achieve the best cooling effect:

1. Please keep A/C filter surface clean, and there is no obvious blockage;
2. Air volume adjustment: Max level;
3. Temperature adjustment: Max. Cold;
4. Outside/Recirculated air mode adjustment: Select recirculated air mode;

5. Mode adjustment: Face mode;
6. Refrigeration system ON: Turn on air conditioning compressor (A/C indicator comes on).

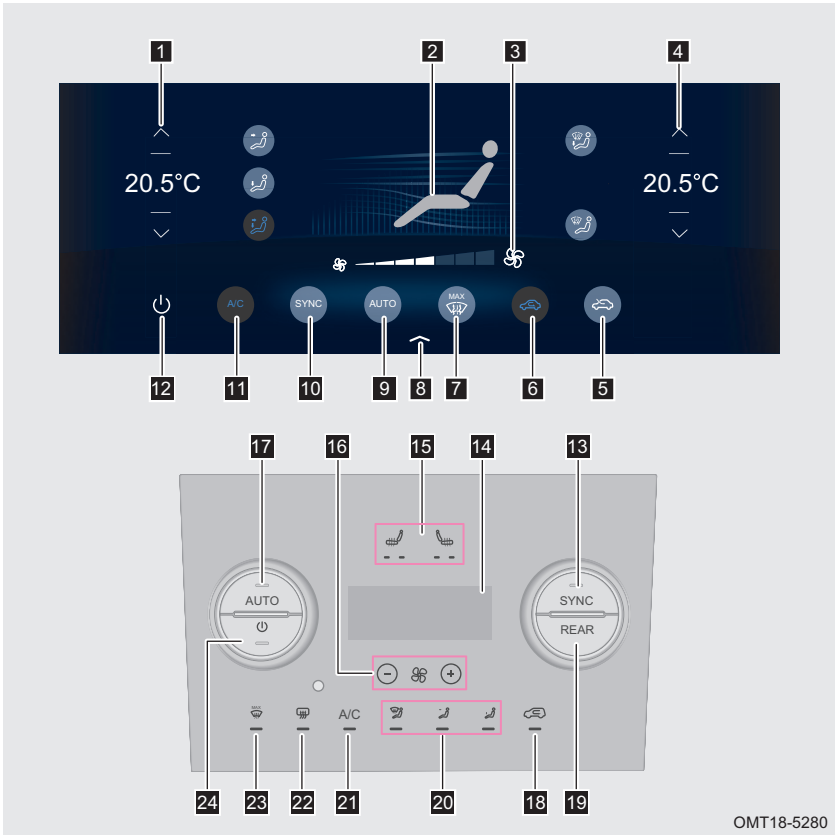
READ

- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning light. If engine is overheating, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.
- When air is cooled down quickly in heat humid condition, fog may be seen from outlet, it is normal physical phenomenon.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system not less than 5 minutes every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germ.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C switch, air conditioning compressor still cannot be turned on.
- After temperature in vehicle is decreased to lower temperature, to reduce the influence to power system power and fuel consumption, compressor will turn off automatically, so if using air conditioning in spring and autumn seasons with low temperature, the compressor will be turned on or off automatically, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease as time, if you feel refrigeration effect of air conditioning is poor, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Also, surface dirt and block in air conditioning condenser may cause poor refrigeration effect, please keep condenser clean.
- After using air conditioning refrigeration system, water is dripping from the air conditioning drain pipe and forming a pool, it is normal.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off and you feel lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.

CAUTION

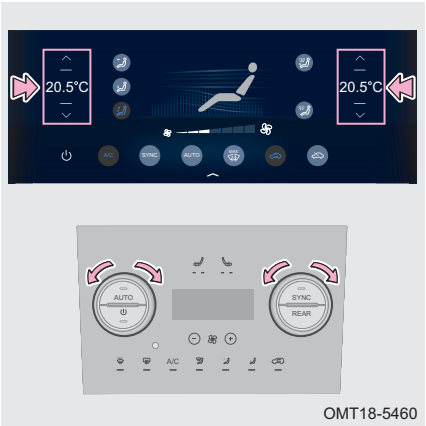
- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use air conditioning for a long time at low speed when using air conditioning cooling function.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, since the high pressure refrigerant is harmful to human, it is necessary to contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase Chery special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the Chery authorized service station, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot summer, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or death, especially for the infants, even in short time.

Dual Automatic Air Conditioning (If Equipped)



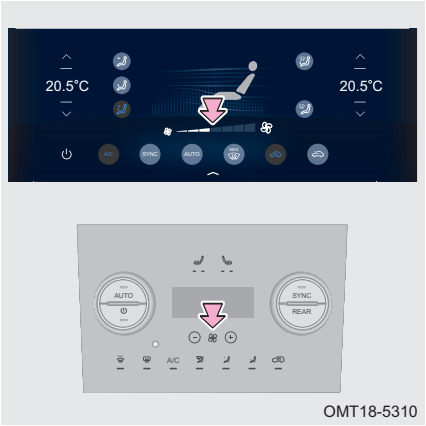
1 Driver side temperature increase/decrease soft button
2 Mode state display
3 Airflow volume adjustment soft button
4 Front passenger side temperature increase/decrease soft button
5 Outside air mode soft button
6 Recirculated air mode soft button
7 Front windshield defogging and defrosting soft button
8 A/C screen off soft button
9 AUTO mode soft button
10 Single mode soft button
11 A/C switch soft button
12 A/C switch soft button
13 Single mode button
14 Mode state display
15 Driver/Front passenger's seat heater button
16 Air volume adjustment button
17 AUTO mode button
18 Outside/Recirculated air mode button
19 Rear A/C switch
20 Mode adjustment button
21 A/C switch button
22 Rear defrosting button
23 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button
24 A/C switch button

■ Driver side temperature adjustment knob/front passenger side temperature adjustment knob



Air conditioning temperature can be adjusted by operating driver side temperature adjustment knob/front passenger side temperature adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

■ Airflow volume adjustment knob



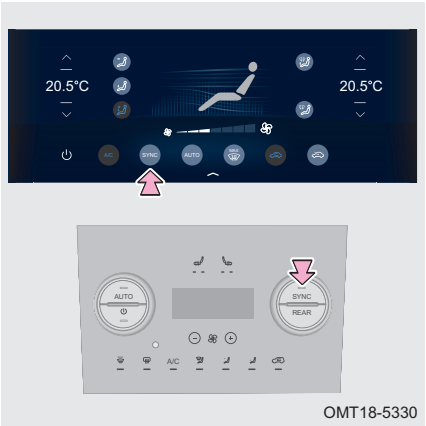
OMT18-5310

The level of air volume can be adjusted using airflow volume adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

There are 7 levels for airflow volume, and the actual airflow volume level will be displayed on the display.

Press airflow volume adjustment button to directly recall the A/C menu screen on audio head unit.

■ Single/Dual mode switch



OMT18-5330

Single/Dual mode can be controlled using single mode button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

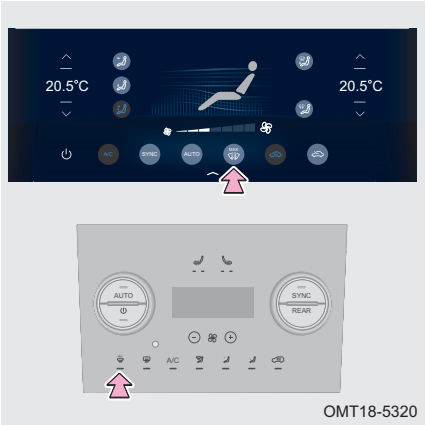
Single mode: SYNC indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning is in single mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature cannot be adjusted separately.

Dual mode: SYNC indicator is off, indicating that the air conditioning is in dual mode. Driver side and front passenger side temperature can be adjusted separately.

READ

Directly rotating the front passenger side temperature adjustment knob can enter dual mode and SYNC indicator goes out.

■ Front windshield defogging and defrosting button



OMT18-5320

Defrosting and defogging function can be achieved using front windshield defogging and defrosting button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting button indicator comes on, indicating that the front windshield defogging and defrosting function is operating. The indicator goes off, indicating that the front windshield defogging and defrosting function stops operating.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting: Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield.

When air volume is not in OFF, touching front windshield defogging and defrosting button will turn on outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

For the best defogging/defrosting effect, please operate as follows:

1. Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry. If there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off;
2. Air volume adjustment: Max. level;
3. Temperature adjustment: Adjust the comfortable temperature;
4. Outside/Recirculated air mode switch: Select the outside air mode;
5. Mode adjustment: Touch the defrosting button or adjust the foot defrosting mode;
6. Refrigeration system ON: A/C indicator comes on.

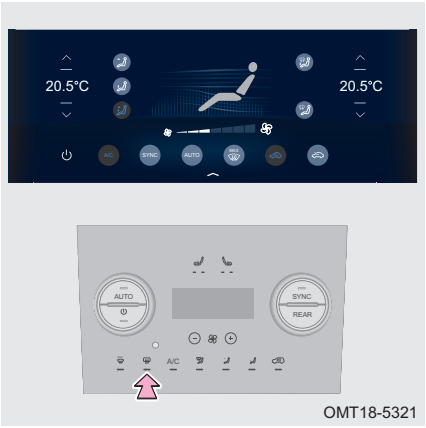
READ

- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Keep A/C on. If A/C is turned off, it will affect the defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Keep outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, it will affect the defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Keep outside air mode and adjust to heat direction, the air outlets on both sides of instrument panel should face the windows on both sides, A/C auxiliary defogging should be turned on when outside temperature is above 0°C.
- If air conditioning fails to cool, it will affect the defogging effect. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, adjust mode and air volume to proper position to improve comfort in vehicle.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in the winter, otherwise it will make the front windshield fog up quickly.
- Poor visibility of glass will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury, therefore, it is vital for traffic safety to ensure a good vision during driving.

■ Rear defrosting button (If equipped)



OMT18-5321

After starting vehicle, rear defrosting button is pressed and indicator comes on, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function is operating. The indicator goes off, indicating that the rear defrosting or outside rear view mirror defrosting function stops operating.

The function will automatically shut off after the defrosters have operated about 20 minutes.

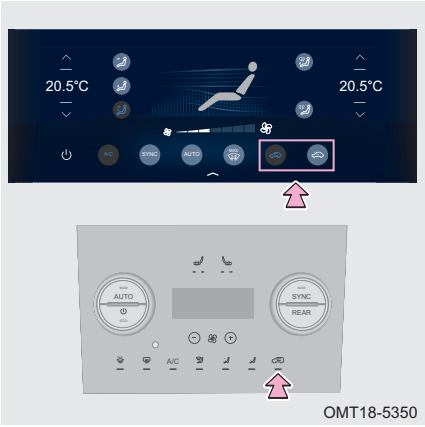
CAUTION

- Make sure that the rear defroster is turned off when the fog and frost on window surfaces are cleared.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror when the defroster is operating or has just turned off.

■ Outside/Recirculated air mode button



OMT18-5350

Press the outside/recirculated air mode button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display to switch between recirculated and outside air modes.

Press outside/recirculated air mode button. If indicator comes on, it indicates that it is in recirculated air mode; If indicator goes off, it indicates that it is in outside air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

- In dusty environment.
- Insulate car interior from exterior smells.
- Preventing outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
- To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.

■ A/C switch

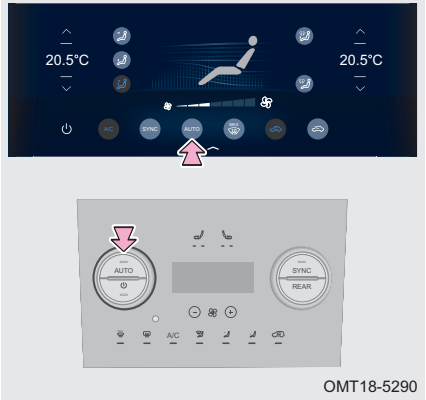


OMT18-5291

Air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating A/C switch on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

The A/C switch indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is turned on. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

■ AUTO button



OMT18-5290

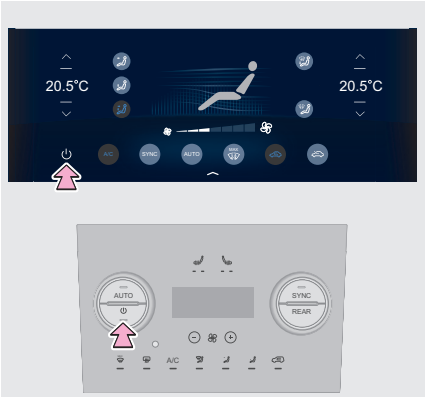
Air conditioning AUTO mode can be turned on by operating AUTO button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

In AUTO mode, when A/C switch, air blowing mode, air volume adjustment or temperature LOW/HI is operated, the corresponding function exits AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches, circulation function exits automatic control, and other functions are still in AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, operate AUTO button without exiting AUTO mode.

■ A/C switch button



OMT18-5340

Air conditioning system can be turned off using A/C switch button on air conditioning control panel or soft button "⏻" on the display.

■ Front - Windshield Heating (If equipped)

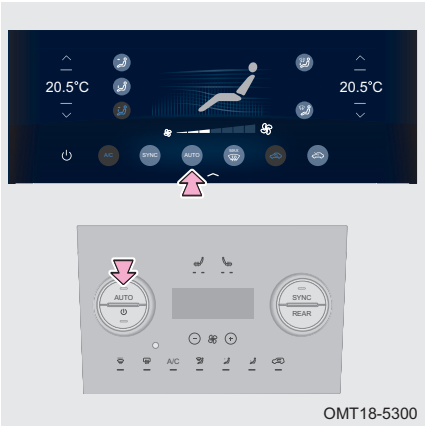


OMT18-5341

Press touch button, turn on / and off the function.

Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (Automatic Air Conditioning)

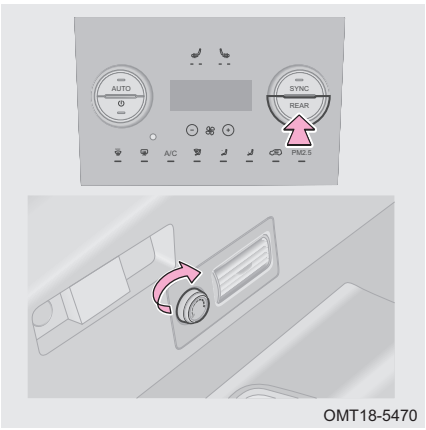


OMT18-5300

When the engine is operating:

1. Press AUTO button, automatically control air blowing mode, air volume adjustment, outside/recirculated air, and refrigeration system operation by setting the temperature;
2. In AUTO mode, when A/C switch, air blowing mode, air volume adjustment or temperature LOW/HI is operated and outside/recirculated air mode is switched, the corresponding function exits AUTO mode;
3. For your convenience and improving air conditioning cooling effect, operate AUTO button and set air conditioning temperature to 22°C;

■ Rear air conditioning refrigeration operation (If equipped)



OMT18-5470

When the engine is in operating condition:

Press REAR button, A/C switch (A/C switch indicator comes on) and turn on rear airflow volume adjustment knob to enter rear air conditioning cooling mode.

> READ
> Rear only has air conditioning cooling function and it cannot heating.

For the best cooling effect, please operate as follows:

1. Keep the surface of air conditioning filter clean and there is no obvious blockage;
2. Air volume adjustment: Max. level;
3. Temperature adjustment: Max. Cold;
4. Outside/Recirculated air mode adjustment: Select recirculated air mode;
5. Mode adjustment: Face mode;
6. Refrigeration system ON: Air conditioning compressor ON (A/C indicator comes on).

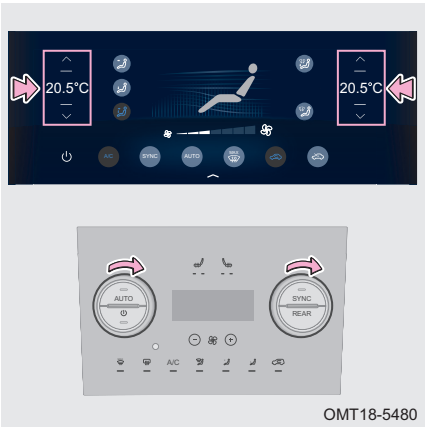
READ

- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning light. If engine is overheating, it is advisable to turn off air conditioning.
- When air is cooled down quickly in heat humid condition, fog may be seen from outlet, it is normal physical phenomenon.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system not less than 5 minutes every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germ.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button, air conditioning compressor still cannot be started.
- After temperature in vehicle is decreased to lower temperature, to reduce the influence to power system power and fuel consumption, compressor will turn off automatically, so if using air conditioning in spring and autumn seasons with low temperature, the compressor will be turned on or off automatically, this is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease as time, if you feel refrigeration effect of air conditioning is poor, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- Also, surface dirt and block in air conditioning condenser may cause poor refrigeration effect, please keep condenser clean.
- After using air conditioning refrigeration system, water is dripping from the air conditioning drain pipe and forming a pool, it is normal.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off and you feel lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.

CAUTION

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use air conditioning for a long time at low speed when using air conditioning cooling function.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, since the high pressure refrigerant is harmful to human, it is necessary to contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase Chery special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at the Chery authorized service station, or air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot summer, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or death, especially for the infants, even in short time.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

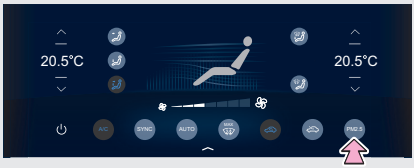


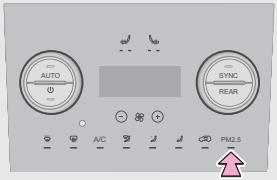
OMT18-5480

When the engine is operating:

1. Turn the blower on;
2. Air conditioning panel operation: Rotate temperature adjustment knob clockwise indicates heating; Adjust temperature to desired temperature directly on air conditioning screen of audio panel;
3. It is recommended to adjust to foot mode and turn off A/C switch.

One-button Purification Function (If Equipped)





OMT18-5490

Operate the PM2.5 button on air conditioning control panel to enable the one-button purification function of air conditioning system to purify the air inside the vehicle.

PM2.5 button indicator comes on, indicating that the one-button purification function is enabled. The indicator goes off, indicating that the purification function stops operating.

Using the soft button on the display can only enter the PM2.5 display screen, but it cannot be used to turn on/off the one-button purification function.

When the air quality in the vehicle is poor, the system will provide corresponding reminder. Please operate by following the reminder, press the PM2.5 button to turn on the air purification function.



OMT18-5500

READ

- After operating the PM2.5 button, the inside air purification function is enabled. To ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic air conditioning in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- When operating the PM2.5 button, the corresponding operation indicator comes on, outside/recirculated air mode damper will switch, and the air volume and mode may change.
- The filter element blockage reminder (lasts for 60 seconds) appears after operating the PM2.5 button every 5,000 km. The reminder will appear again after driving for 5,000 km.
- PM2.5 one-button purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions.

1. When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), one-button purification function cannot be turned on after 20 seconds;
2. One-button purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging is turned on;
3. One-button purification function cannot be turned on when water temperature is lower than 70°C or inner temperature is lower than 15°C while outer temperature is lower than 2°C, (one-button purification function can be turned on only when water temperature is higher than 70°C and inner temperature is higher than 15°C while outer temperature is lower than 2°C).

- The air purification effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature in winter.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please subject to the actual vehicle.

Air Quality Control System (If Equipped)

When the outside air quality level is detected to decline in AUTO mode, the recirculated air mode will be turned on automatically. When the air quality returns to a proper level, the recirculated air mode will be turned off automatically. This function cannot be used to detect unpleasant gas. When the ambient temperature is no more than 2°C, air quality control system does not respond, preventing windshield and window from fogging up.

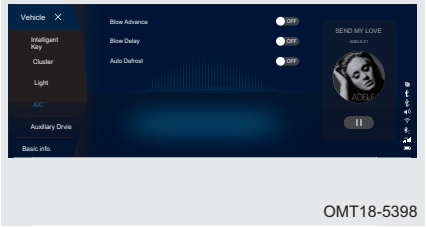
Anion Function (If Equipped)



OMT18-5399

Operate the anion button on the air conditioning control panel to turn on anion and one-button purification functions at the same time. Compared with the single one-button purification function, the air purification efficiency is higher and the air environment quality in the vehicle is better after the anion function is added.

Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)



OMT18-5398

The automatic defogging function can be set through the audio. When front windshield has the risk of fogging, the air conditioning will automatically remove the fog on the front windshield to ensure the driving safety.

READ

After the setting item of automatic defogging function is turned on, the air conditioning will start automatically under certain conditions, which is a normal phenomenon.

Blower Advanced ON and Delayed OFF Function (If Equipped)

■ Blower advanced ON

If the vehicle is parked outside in hot summer, the temperature in the vehicle will be very high. The temperature in the vehicle can be reduced in advance by setting the blower advanced ON function, meanwhile the odor emitted by interior trim at high temperatures is removed.

When outside temperature is higher than 20°C and system detects that the battery voltage meets the requirements, deactivate the vehicle fortifying and blower will start operating in advance (30 seconds).

When the blower operates for more than 30 seconds, open a door or set vehicle fortifying, the blower will stop operating.

READ

The blower can operate up to two times before starting the vehicle.

■ Delayed OFF function

The blower delayed OFF function is used to dry the air conditioning lines to keep a comparatively dry A/C system and preventing heavy accumulation of bacteria and other contaminants.

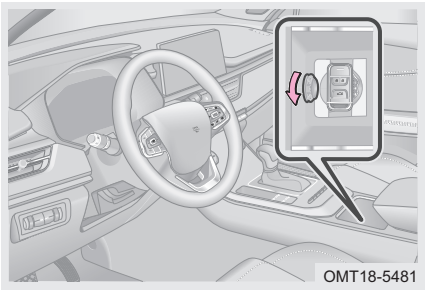
The A/C was turned on during last driving, and the battery voltage met the requirements. After setting the vehicle fortifying for more than 5 minutes, the blower will stop operating 1 minute after it starts operating.

READ

Blower advanced ON and delayed OFF functions need to be set in audio system (For details, refer to "5-1. Audio and Entertainment System").

Center Armrest Refrigeration Function (If Equipped)

■ Usage of center armrest refrigeration function

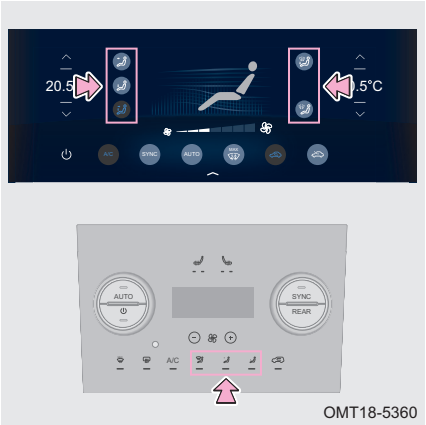


1. Move cup holder backwards and lift center armrest if necessary.
2. Perform air conditioning refrigeration operation (for details, refer to "Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation" in this section). As shown in the figure, rotate knob in center armrest counterclockwise to expose the air outlet and blow cold air, put the required refrigerated items.

READ

Refrigerated items should not be too large, otherwise the center armrest may be impossible to be lowered.

Mode Adjustment



OMT18-5360

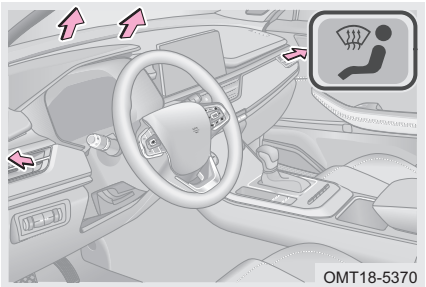
The mode can be adjusted using mode adjustment button (defrosting, face, foot can be combined) air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display.

Defrosting mode: Airflow is blown out from defroster outlet.

Face mode: Airflow is blown out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Foot mode: Airflow is blown out from foot outlet.

■ Air flows only to front windshield and front windows

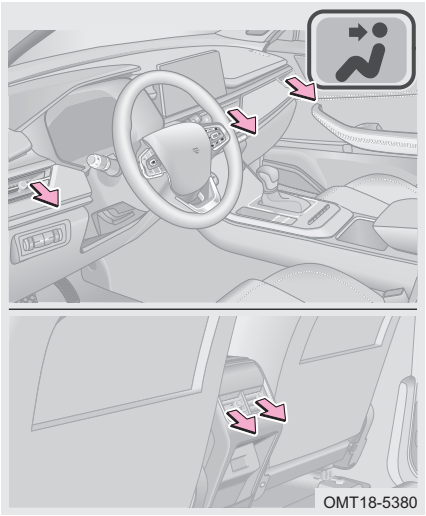

OMT18-5370

Air flows mainly from front windshield defrosting outlets and side defrosting outlets.

READ

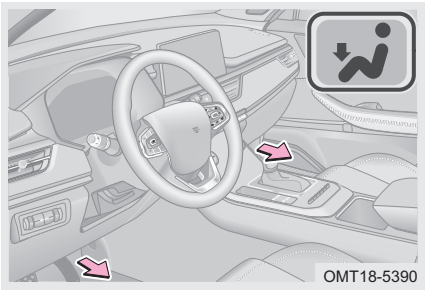
If windshield windows become fogged-up during driving (For details, refer to "Front Windshield Defogging and Defrosting" in this section).

■ Air flows to face



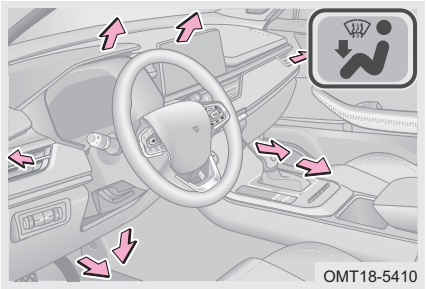
Air flows mainly from instrument panel outlets.

■ Air flows to feet



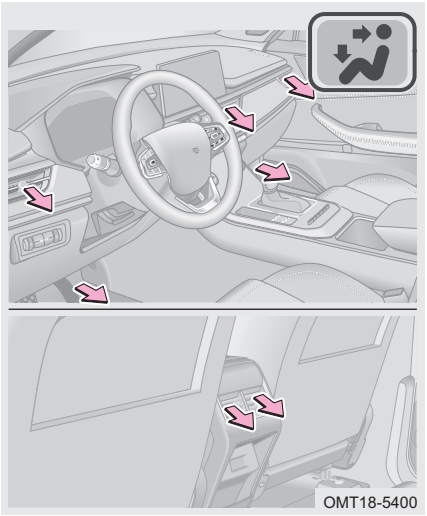
Air flows mainly from floor outlets.

■ Air flows to feet, front windshield and front windows



Air flows mainly from floor outlets, front windshield defrosting outlets and side defrosting outlets.

■ Air flows to face and foot

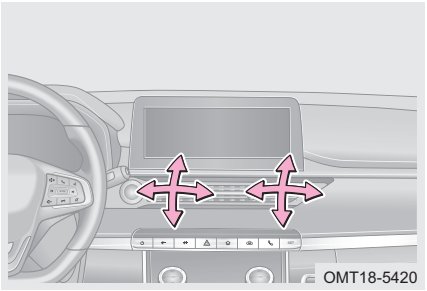


Air flows mainly from floor outlets and instrument panel outlets.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

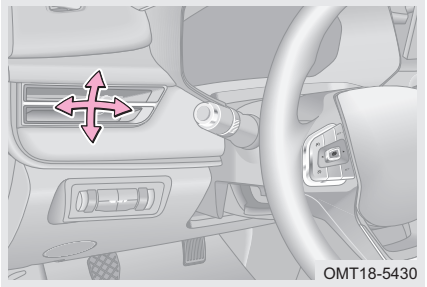
Adjust airflow direction and air volume of air outlets by pulling adjustment lever.

■ Center outlets



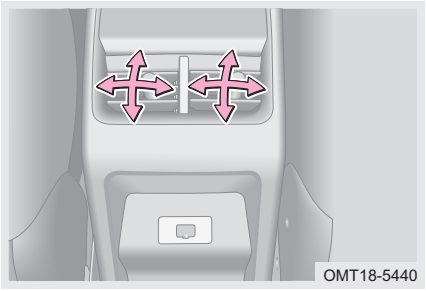
Move center outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

■ Side outlets



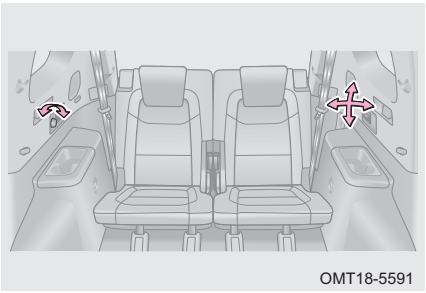
Move side outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

■ Armrest outlets


OMT18-5440

Move outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

■ Rear seat side outlets (If equipped)

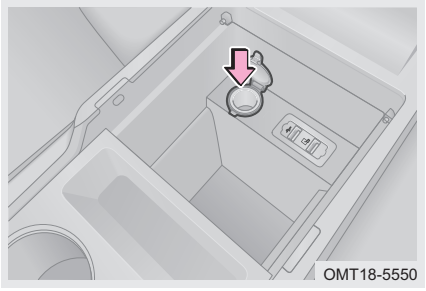

OMT18-5591

- Move side outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.
- Rear airflow volume adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the volume, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

5-7. Power Outlet

Power Outlet

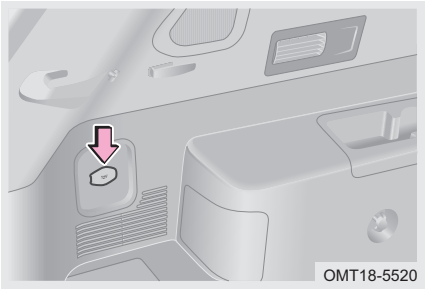
■ Front power outlet


OMT18-5550

Front power outlet is located in the center armrest.

Power outlet can be used only when engine start stop switch is turned to ACC/ON mode.

■ Rear power outlet



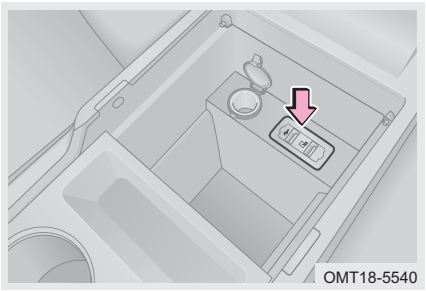
Rear power outlet is located on the left luggage compartment protector plate.

Power outlet can be used only when engine start stop switch is turned to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

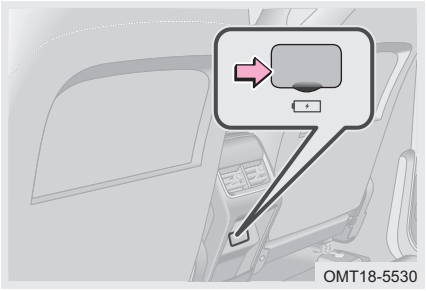
- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from discharging, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

■ USB



USB port is located in the center armrest.

This port is used to connect mobile phone, ipad, U disc and other equipment to audio head unit.

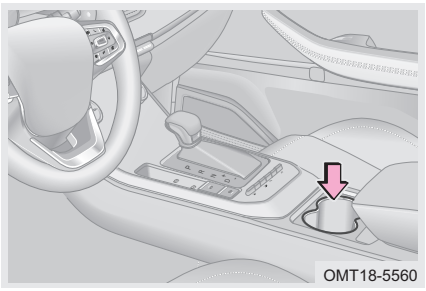


USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest.

It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

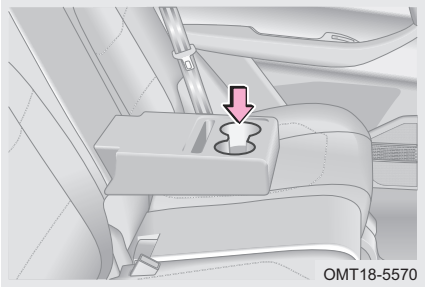
5-8. Cup Holders

Cup Holders


OMT18-5560

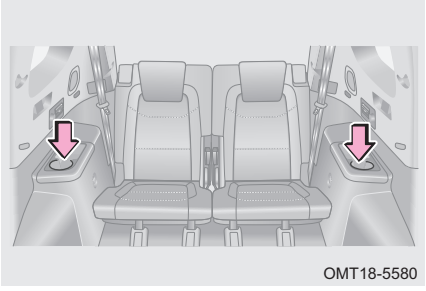
Front cup holder

Cup holder is located on the auxiliary fascia console.


OMT18-5570

Center cup holder

Center cup holder is located on the rear center seatback.


OMT18-5580

Rear cup holders (If equipped)

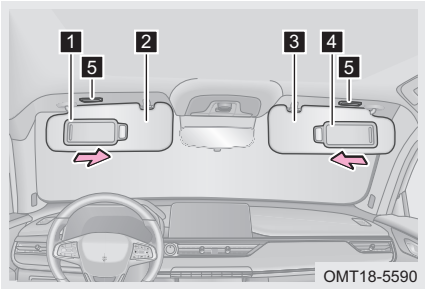
Rear cup holder is located on the rear center seatback.

⚠ WARNING

- Cover the cup or drink can firmly to prevent water or drinks from spraying out.
- Do not place anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders.

5-9. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



1 Driver vanity mirror

2 Driver side sun visor

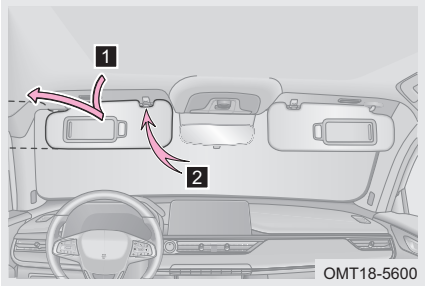
3 Front passenger side sun visor

4 Front passenger side vanity mirror

5 Vanity mirror light (If equipped)

Horizontally move the vanity mirror sliding plate to use the vanity mirror.

For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when moving the vanity mirror sliding plate.

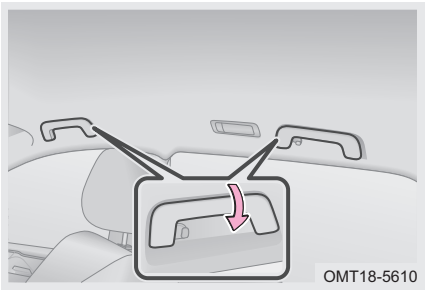


1 Flip the sun visor down.

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade sidelight.

5-10.Assist Grips and Rear Center Armrest

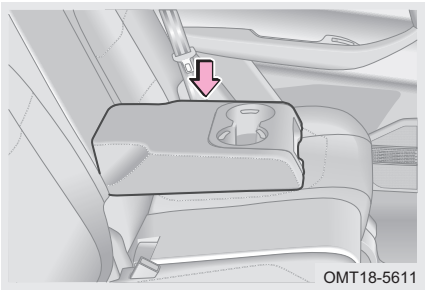
Assist Grips



Assist grips are installed above front passenger door and center or both rear passenger doors respectively.

When traveling on rough roads, passengers can keep balance by grasping the grips to ensure safety.

Center Armrest (Second Row)


OMT18-5611

Second row center seat is equipped with a fold-down armrest with cup holders. Flip the armrest down for use.

READ

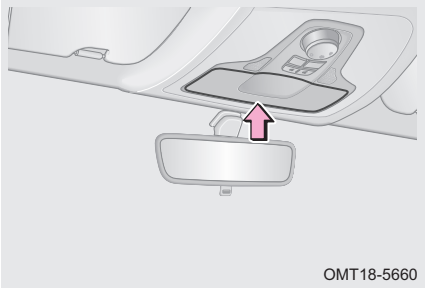
Please return the center armrest to its original position when not in use.

WARNING

Anyone (including adult and children) cannot occupy the rear center seat after flipping the center armrest down, because the passenger on this seat cannot maintain the correct posture and it is very easy to cause injury.

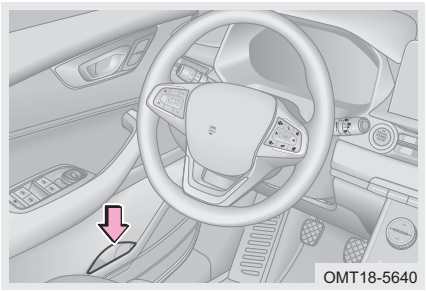
5-11.Storage Space

■ Glasses box


OMT18-5660

Glasses box is near front interior light closely. It can be used to store glasses or other small items.

■ Door storage boxes

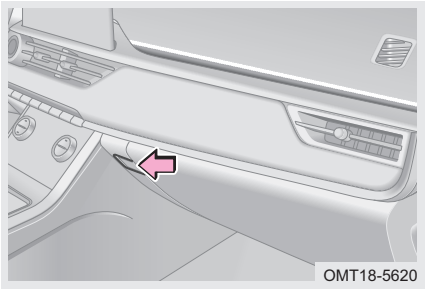

OMT18-5640

Door storage boxes on front and rear doors can be used for storing maps, cups and other items.

READ

Do not place oversize objects in the pockets.

■ Glove Box



Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

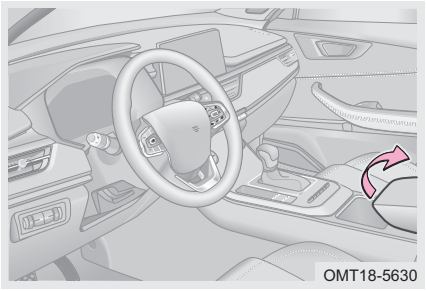
READ

Do not place oversize objects in the glove box.

⚠ WARNING

- Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open glove box or the items stored inside.

■ Auxiliary fascia console storage box

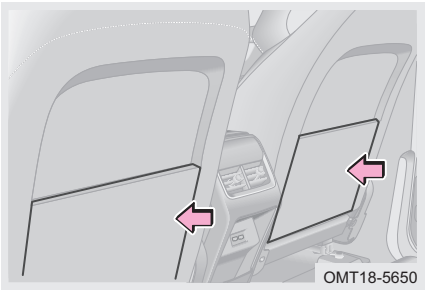


Auxiliary fascia console storage box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

⚠ WARNING

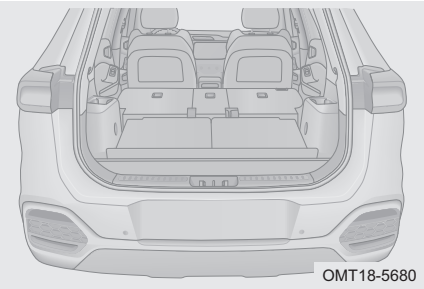
- Neither adults nor children can sit on the auxiliary fascia console storage box.
- Auxiliary fascia console storage box must be closed when the vehicle is moving. Opening auxiliary fascia console storage box may obstruct driver's arm movement, beware of injuries.

■ Seat storage bag



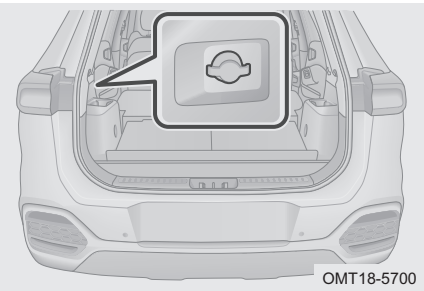
Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

■ Luggage compartment


OMT18-5680

Split-folding rear seats provide convenience for storage of cargo. The seatback is easy to fold. While folding the seats, continuous, flat-like and extending cargo back panel is provided. (For details, refer to "3-7. Seat").

■ Fixing rope buckle


OMT18-5700

They are located at both sides of luggage compartment, and used for securing objects which easily falls down.

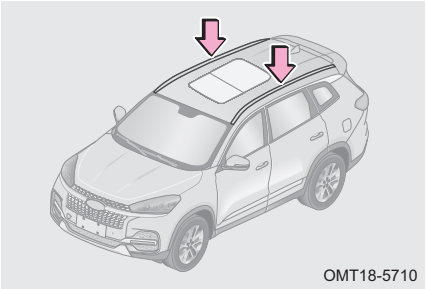
■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

- To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger in seats (For details, refer to "3-7. Seat").
- Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded weight.
- Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious injury in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Carrier


OMT18-5710

Roof carrier is used for loading cargo with 50 kg of max. load. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (such as luggage compartment, cross rod etc.) does not exceed 50 kg. Overweight will cause carrier, panoramic glass, body roof and other components damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not within the warranty.

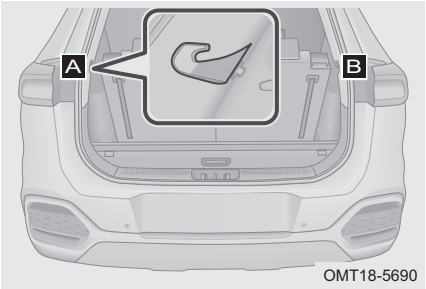
⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on roof carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle roll-over due to failure to operate vehicle correctly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overload the roof carrier.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width.
- Before driving, make sure that cargo is securely fastened on the roof carrier.
- Be careful not to scratch the surface of the roof. Place a blanket or other protector between cargo and roof if necessary.

■ Luggage curtain (if equipped)



OMT18-5690

- Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet.
- Pull the luggage curtain vertically to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Handling Vehicle In Emergency

Hazard Light 288
Reflective Vest 289
Warning Triangle 289
Spare Tools 289

6-2. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving 290
Repairing Tire in Emergency (If Equipped) 290
Tire Replacement 292

6-3. If Your Vehicle Overheats

If Your Vehicle Overheats 297

6-4. Replacing Fuse

Fuse 298
Fuse Box Distribution 298
Checking Fuse 299
Replacing Fuse 300

6-5. Towing Vehicle

Towing Precautions 301
Emergency Towing 302
Installing Towing Eyelet 304

6-6. Removing Battery

Removing Battery 305

6-7. If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally

Simple Checks 306
Starting a Flooded Engine 307

6-8. Jump-starting

Jump-starting 307
Jump-starting Procedures 307

6-9. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch 309

6-10. Back Door Emergency Opening

Emergency Opening 310

6-11. ERA-GLONASS (If Equipped)

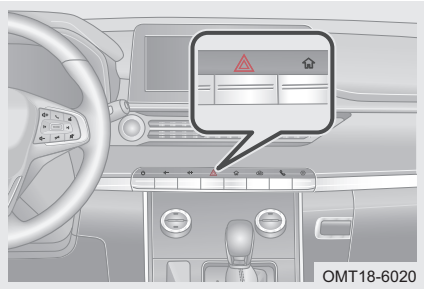
ERA-GLONASS 310

6-1. Handling Vehicle In Emergency

During driving, most of dangers happens suddenly, only making correct judgment in an instant, operating properly and controlling vehicle in such case can prevent accident or reduce accident loss and personal injuries.

Hazard Light

If you stop vehicle at a place where traffic accidents may occur, always turn on hazard lights to warn other vehicle drivers. Stop vehicle at a place as far away from the road as possible.



Hazard light switch is located under the audio head unit. Press hazard light switch to turn on the hazard lights, press the switch again to turn off.

■ Emergency brake turn signal lights alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency at higher speed, all turn signal lights flash quickly and turn signal light indicator on instrument cluster blinks at the same time. When brake pedal is released, hazard light switch is pressed or engine start stop switch is switched to OFF mode, all turn signal lights stop flashing.

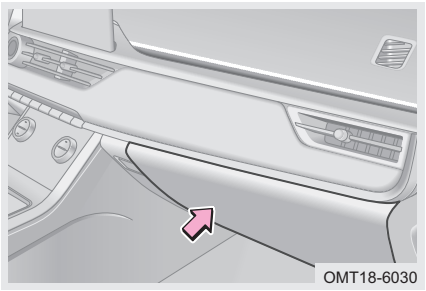
READ

- The hazard lights operates even when engine start stop switch is turned off.
- When the airbags operates, the hazard light function is activated automatically.

CAUTION

To prevent battery from being discharged, do not turn on the hazard lights more than necessary when the engine is not running.

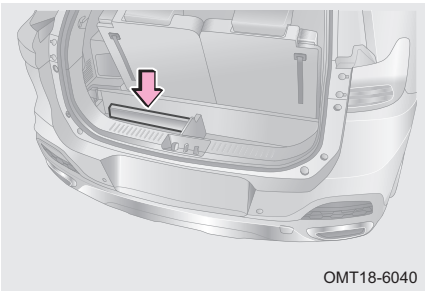
Reflective Vest


OMT18-6030

The reflective vest is placed in the glove box.

When the driver encounters a sudden failure to stop to handle or when an accident happens, wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. Its reflective performance can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT18-6040

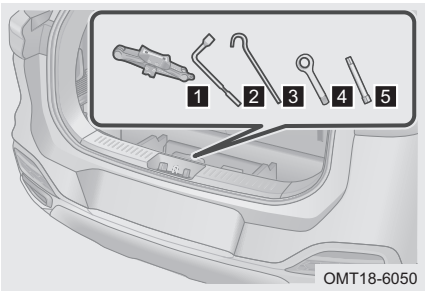
Warning triangle is located at lower center of the luggage compartment carpet.

When the driver encounters a sudden failure to stop the vehicle to handle or when an accident happens, the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

CAUTION

- On a highway, it should be place over 150 m away.
- On a normal road, the warning triangle should be placed over 50 m away from your vehicle in oncoming direction.
- In rain or on a corner, it should be place over 150 m away to allow vehicles behind notice the triangle as early as possible.

Spare Tools



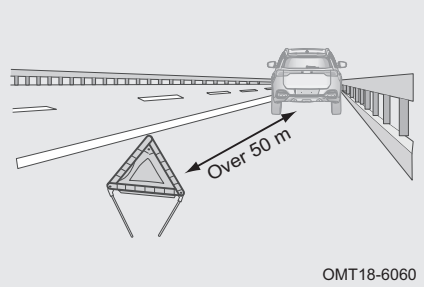
OMT18-6050

1 Jack
2 Wheel bolt wrench
3 Jack rocker
4 Towing eyelet
5 Wheel bolt wrench extension rod

6-2. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road. Park it on firm and level ground as much as possible. Avoid stopping on center or divider of a highway.



1. Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P position (vehicle with automatic transmission) or neutral position (vehicle with manual transmission).
2. Turn off engine and turn on hazard lights;
3. Have everyone get out of vehicle and stay away from traffic;
4. Take the warning triangle out from luggage compartment, and place it over 50-150 m away behind the vehicle, it depends on conditions.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire beyond repair.

Repairing Tire in Emergency (If Equipped)

Emergency repair instructions for tire air leakage on vehicle equipped with tire repair liquid:

Inflation pump and tire repair liquid are mainly used in an emergency when the tire is leaking. When there are leaks less than 6 mm and slow air leakages, the tire can be inflated and repaired in a short time.

1. Take out inflation pump and tire repair liquid from the vehicle, and then shake well the tire repair liquid;
2. Pull out inflation pump hose and power cables, then connect inflation pump hose to the outlet of repair liquid bottle and tighten it;
3. Unscrew the valve cap protective cover of flat tire and store;
4. Install the tire repair liquid bottle into the fixing groove on inflation pump, and then place inflation pump near the tire so that the tire repair liquid bottle is in an upside-down state;
5. Connect the hose of tire repair liquid bottle to the air valve of tire and tighten it;

6. Start the engine, connect the inflation pump plug to the backup power source, and turn on the inflation pump switch;
7. Tire repair liquid will be filled into the tire within 10 minutes using inflation pump, meanwhile, observe if the tire inflation pressure reaches to the recommended pressure range, turn off the inflation pump switch and store the inflation pump;
8. After the tire repair is complete, start the vehicle and drive within 1 minute. Check the tire inflation pressure with the inflation pump after driving for 5 km.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the tire inflation pressure is within the specified range, please continue to drive for 200 km and go to the nearest Chery authorized service station for further repairs and the vehicle speed is not allowed to exceed 80 km/h during during.
- If the tire inflation pressure is lower than 2.0 bar, please inflate to tire to the specified range with the inflation pump. Repeat the above steps. If the wheel still leaks, please contact Chery authorized service station for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

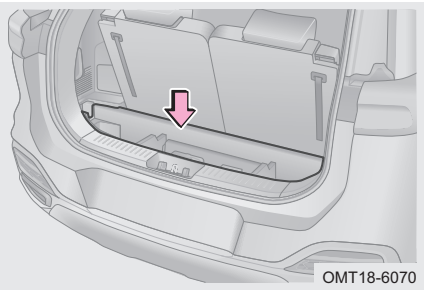
- When repairing tires, park the vehicle as far away from traffic as possible, turn on hazard warning lights and put the warning triangle, pay attention to the local laws and regulation.
- The emergency tire repair device is only used in an emergency. After repairing tire in emergency, drive the vehicle immediately to the nearest Chery authorized service station.
- When the vehicle stops immediately because the tire cutout is more than 6 mm, tire inflation pressure is too low or tire is seriously damaged, please contact the nearest Chery authorized service station.
- Do casually remove any foreign matter (screw or steel nail etc.) punctured in tire.
- Inflation pump should not keep running for more than 10 minutes, which may cause overheating risk. It should be cooled for a few minutes before using. The pump and hose can be very hot when inflating.
- Avoid rapid acceleration, emergency braking and fast cornering after using tire repair liquid.
- Tire repair liquid should not come into contact with skin or eyes and should be kept away from children.
- Do not inject tire repair liquid into tire when the tire inflation pressure is sufficient, otherwise, the tire repair liquid may be sprayed out due to excessive tire inflation pressure.

Tire Replacement

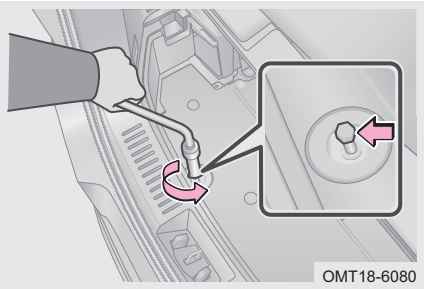
■ Preparations for jacking up

1. Apply the parking brake;
2. Use jack on a firm level ground;
3. It is recommended to block the vehicle wheels and ensure no one is in the vehicle;
4. Never allow anyone put their bodies under the vehicle that is being jacked with jack.

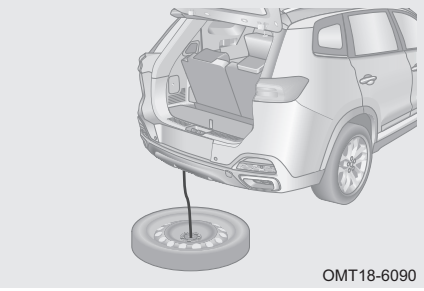
■ Taking out spare tire


OMT18-6070

1. Open the back door and lift the luggage compartment carpet;
2. Take out the luggage compartment storage box;


OMT18-6080

3. Insert the wheel bolt wrench extension rod into spare tire fixing bolt;
4. Rotate the wheel bolt wrench extension rod counterclockwise with a wheel bolt wrench to release the spare tire;

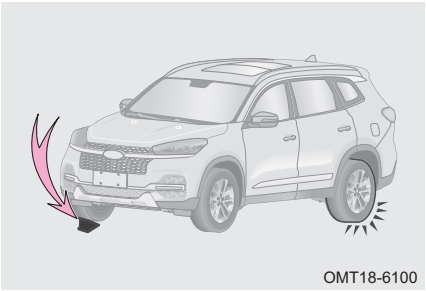

OMT18-6090

5. Remove spare tire fixing device hook and spare tire when spare tire is lowered to the lowest position.
6. Stow the replaced tire in the opposite method after completion.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Take care to use spare tools when removing spare tire to prevent interior from being scratched or damaged.

■ Replacing with spare tire

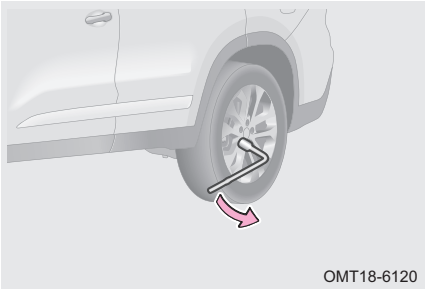
1. Place a wheel block.


OMT18-6100

When jacking up vehicle, you must put a block under the tire diagonally opposite to the tire being removed to prevent wheels from rolling.

Flat Tire	Wheel Block Position
Front left wheel	Behind rear right wheel
Front right wheel	Behind rear left wheel
Rear left wheel	In front of front right wheel
Rear right wheel	In front of front left wheel

2. Loosen all the wheel bolts.

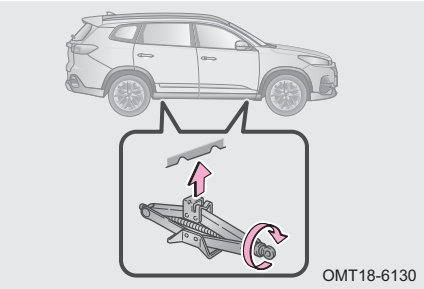

OMT18-6120

Before jacking up vehicle, use wheel bolt wrench to loosen each bolt on the wheel which needs to be replaced counterclockwise. To get the maximum torque, fit wheel bolt wrench to the bolt, set the handle on left side, then grasp the end of wrench handle and push it downward as shown in illustration.

⚠ CAUTION

- During removing the tire bolts by wheel bolt wrench, avoid bolt wrench dropping off from bolt abnormally as much as possible, otherwise, wheel bolts will be damaged easily.
- Do not remove the bolts completely in this step, just loose them partly. Or, wheel may drop off because of the vehicle pressure, causing personal injury or vehicle damage.

3. Operate with the jack.


OMT18-6130

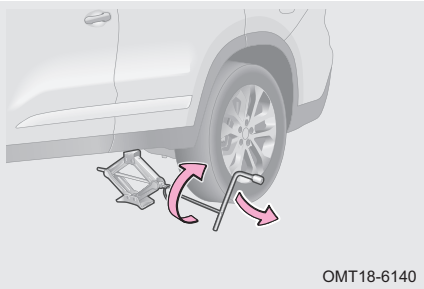
Position jack on firm and level ground and make sure notch of jack is at correct jacking-up point.

Turn jack handle clockwise by hand until notch of jack contacts with the vehicle jacking-up point.

⚠ WARNING

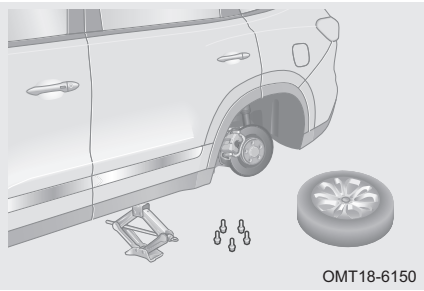
- Jack rated load: 1200 Kg.
- Jack the vehicle to a proper height at which tire can be replaced just.
- Never put any part of body under the vehicle when vehicle is jacked up to avoid personal injury.

4. Jack up vehicle after making sure that no passenger is in vehicle.


OMT18-6140

When jacking up vehicle, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn the wheel bolt wrench clockwise. Once the jack touches the vehicle and begins to lift, check if jack position is proper.

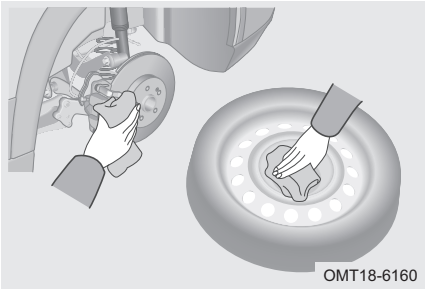
5. Remove wheel to be replaced.


OMT18-6150

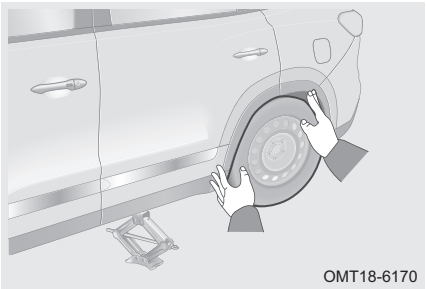
Using wheel bolt wrench, remove 5 wheel bolts counterclockwise and remove wheels.

When resting wheel on ground, place wheel so that wheel design face up, to avoid scratching wheel surface.

6. Install spare tire.

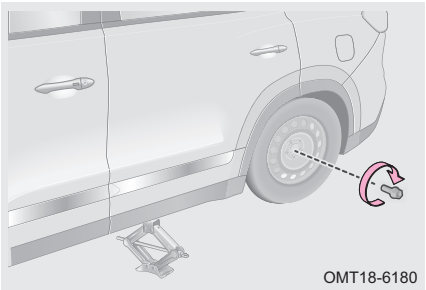

OMT18-6160

Before installing wheel, remove any attachments from mounting surfaces with tools. Make sure wheel hub well contacts with wheel surface. Otherwise, it may cause wheel bolts to loosen and eventually cause a serious accident.


OMT18-6170

Install spare tire to wheel hub.

7. Install wheel bolts.

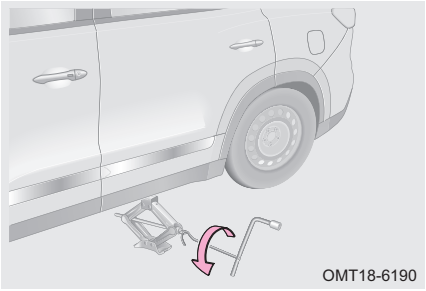

OMT18-6180

Screw in 5 wheel bolts clockwise with hand first when installing wheel bolts. Then straighten the wheel and pretighten all bolts with wheel bolt wrench.

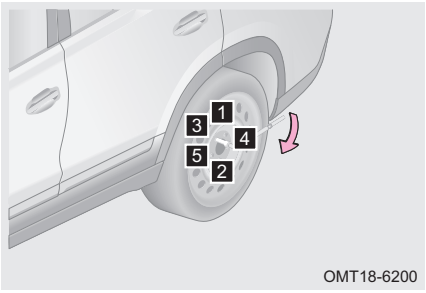
⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply oil or grease on wheel bolts. If there is oil stain on bolt, clean the bolt before installation.

8. Lower vehicle completely and tighten each wheel bolt.



To lower vehicle, turn wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



Using wheel bolt wrench, tighten bolts in sequence shown in illustration. Repeat the process 2 to 3 times to make sure that wheel bolts are tightened in place.

Only use wheel bolt wrench to tighten the bolts.

9. Stow flat tire.

10. Collect jack, warning triangle and all tools, and stow them in original place properly.

11. After replacing, check spare tire pressure.

If pressure alarm (instrument cluster display) occurs or visually check that tire pressure is insufficient obviously, drive slowly to the nearest Chery authorized service station to inflate tire to proper pressure. Do not forget to reinstall tire valve cap, otherwise, dirt and moisture could get into valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If any cap is missing accidentally, please purchase a new one as soon as possible and install.

⚠ WARNING

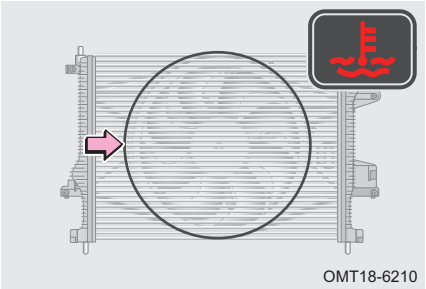
- Driving at specified speed of 80 km/h or less with a non-full-size spare tire.
- When lowering vehicle, make sure that you and all other persons around vehicle stay in a safe area to prevent an accident.
- Non-full size spare tire cannot be used for a long time. Tighten wheel bolts to 130 ± 10 N·m after replacing the non-full size spare wheel. Drive slowly to the nearest Chery authorized service station (recommended distance is not more than 80 km) to replace standard tire. Otherwise, and wheels may fall off due to loose bolts.

6-3. If Your Vehicle Overheats

If Your Vehicle Overheats

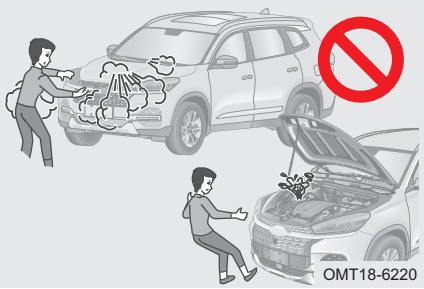
If engine coolant temperature alarms, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high, please take the following measures immediately:

1. Pull safely off the road immediately, stop vehicle at a safe area, apply parking brake and move shift lever to P position, then turn on the hazard lights. Turn off the air conditioning if it is being used.
2. If coolant or steam sprays out from coolant reservoir, stop the engine immediately. Open hood after the steam subsides. If there is no coolant boiling over or steam spraying out, keep the engine idling and check if cooling fans are operating.


OMT18-6210

If the cooling fan does not operate, stop the engine immediately and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ WARNING


OMT18-6220

- If there is steam or coolant sprayed out, it indicates that pressure in cooling system is very high. To avoid personal injury, keep hood closed until there is no steam spraying out.
- Never attempt to open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious scalding injury will be caused by hot coolant and steam blown out under pressure.

3. Open hood, check that radiator, hoses and underneath of the vehicle has no obvious coolant leakage. However, water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal.

WARNING

When engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from moving fan and engine drive belt. Even if engine has been turned off, fan may still run.

4. If coolant leakage is found, stop the engine immediately and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.



OMT18-6230

5. If there are no obvious leaks, check if coolant level is within the range. If it is at or below "MIN", add coolant to the level that between "MIN" and "MAX". Only use the coolant type recommended by Chery.

CAUTION

- In emergency, water can be used if coolant is unavailable. Drive to Chery authorized service station as soon as possible for replacing coolant.
- If engine overheats frequently, please contact the Chery authorized service station immediately to have cooling system inspected and repaired.

6-4. Replacing Fuse

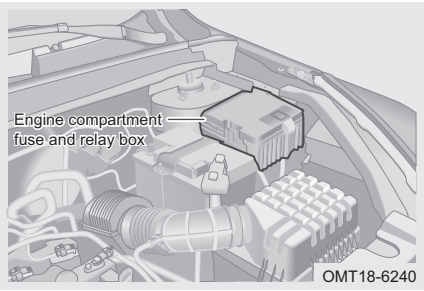
Fuse

Fuses are used to protect electrical circuits and appliances from overload. If any electrical appliance does not operate, it may be caused by a blown fuse. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Fuse Box Distribution

■ Engine compartment fuse box

Engine compartment fuse box is located on the right side of engine compartment (indicated by arrow).

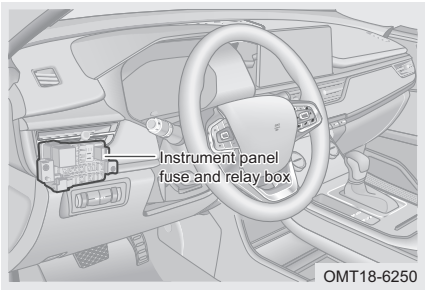


OMT18-6240

1. Turn off all the electrical appliances and engine start stop switch;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove the engine compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace the fuse.

■ Instrument panel fuse box

Instrument panel fuse box is located on back side of instrument cluster left lower protector.

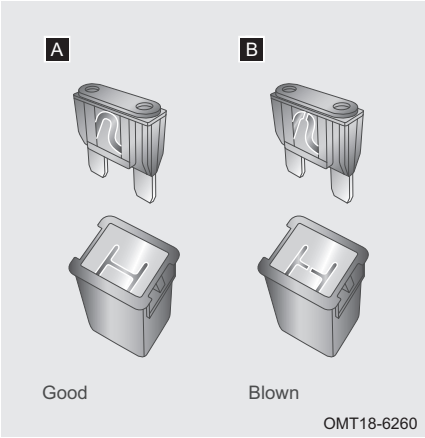


1. Turn off all the electrical appliances and engine start stop switch;
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable;
3. Remove the instrument cluster left lower protector to inspect or replace the fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing / installing the left lower protector. Please contact the Chery authorized service station as necessary.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as dirt and moisture may damage the electrical system.

Checking Fuse



If electrical appliances do not work, please check the relevant fuses. Determine if fuse is normal according to the illustration.

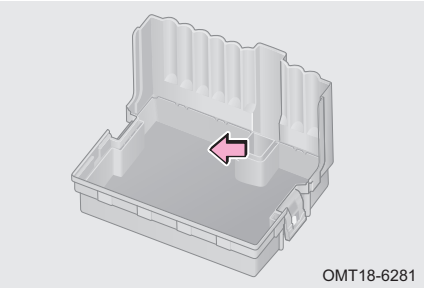
A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

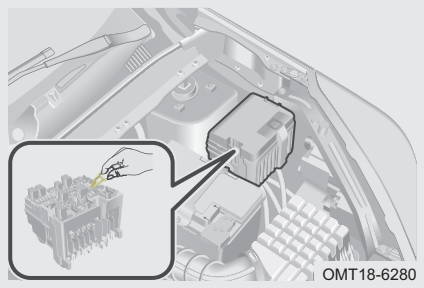
READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



1. Turn off all electrical appliances and engine start stop switch;
2. Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout;



3. Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;
4. Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating;
5. Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. You can see the amperage rating on circuit diagram on the backside fuse box cover.

If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in an emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not modify any fuses or fuse boxes.
- Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.
- Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, otherwise electrical appliances may overload. If the fuse with specified amperage rating is still blown, it indicates that there is a malfunction on circuit. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

6-5. Towing Vehicle

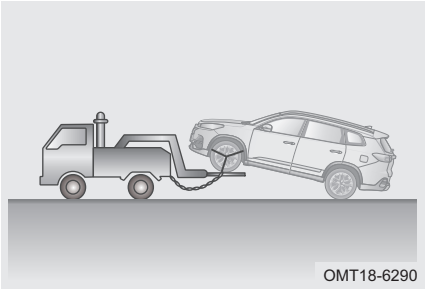
Towing Precautions

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by the state/provincial and local laws and regulations. Wheels contacting with ground and corresponding axle must be in good condition. If not, use a flatbed truck.

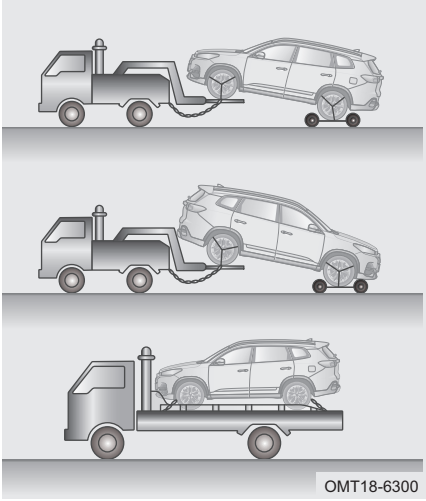
Vehicle towing: Release parking brake before towing, put the shift lever to neutral position.

Releasing electrical parking brake in emergency: With the electrical parking brake released, turn off the engine start stop switch while press and hold electrical parking button. It is recommended to use only in rescue trailers or in rare cases.

The following are correct towing methods:


OMT18-6290

- Towing with a wheel lift-type truck (for front-wheel drive vehicles).

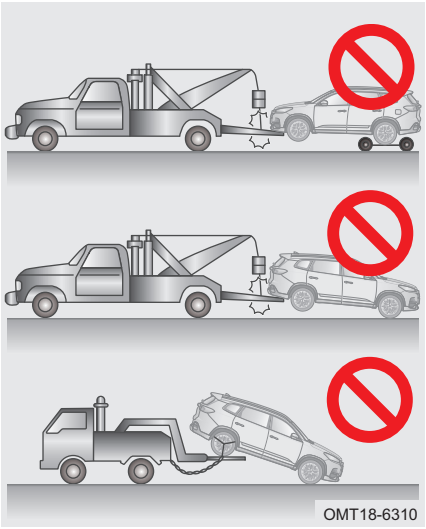

OMT18-6300

- When towing from front of the vehicle, use towing dolly under the rear wheels (for rear-wheel drive vehicles).
- When towing from rear of the vehicle, use towing dolly under the front wheels (for rear-wheel drive vehicles).
- Using a flatbed truck (for front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles).

CAUTION

- 4WD vehicles must use platform truck for towing.
- Before towing, release the parking brake and shift the shift level to neutral position.
- After lifting wheels, it is necessary to fix the lifted wheels with safety chain or equivalent tool.
- Ensure that there is a proper clearance between the wheels not lifted and ground. Otherwise, the bumper and underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

The followings are wrong towing methods:



- Towing with sling-type truck sling from front of the vehicle.
- Towing with sling-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground.
- Towing with wheel lift-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground.

CAUTION

Do not tow with sling-type truck, either from the front or rear. Otherwise, vehicle body may be damaged.

Emergency Towing

If tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing cable, chain or lever secured to the emergency towing eyelet. Use extreme caution when towing a vehicle. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed. Driver must be in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal.

Conditions for emergency towing:

- Release the parking brake.
- Move shift lever to neutral position.

- Engine start stop switch must be in ACC or ON mode

CAUTION

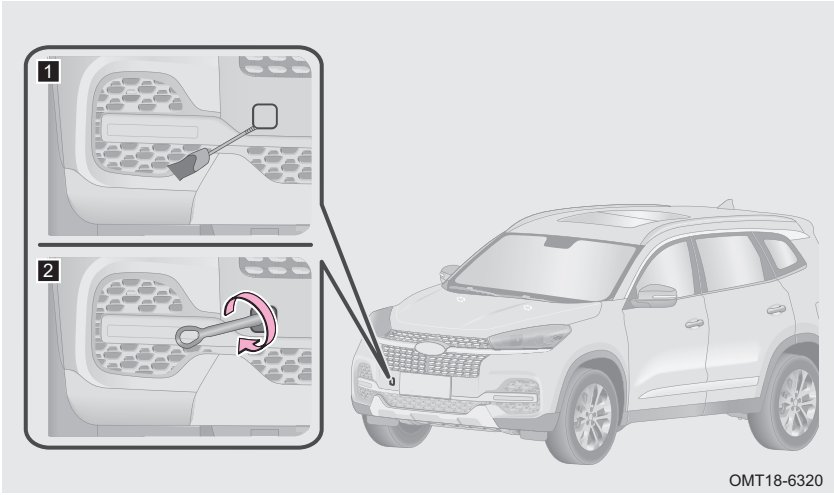
- Towing rope uses hard-wired connection, please refer to local traffic requirements.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- Before emergency towing, make sure that wheels, axle, drive train, steering wheel and brakes are in good condition.
- If engine is not running, vacuum booster and power steering system will not work. Therefore, steering and braking will be more difficult than usual. Operate carefully when towing.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. Please contact Chery authorized service station or a commercial towing service for assistance.

WARNING

- Do not tow vehicle for long periods of time.
- When towing vehicle with automatic transmission, it is recommended to contact Chery authorized service station or a commercial towing service for assistance.
- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- Towing should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed. Make sure that wheels, axle, drive train, steering wheel and brakes are in good condition.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

Installing Towing Eyelet

■ Front installation position of towing eyelet

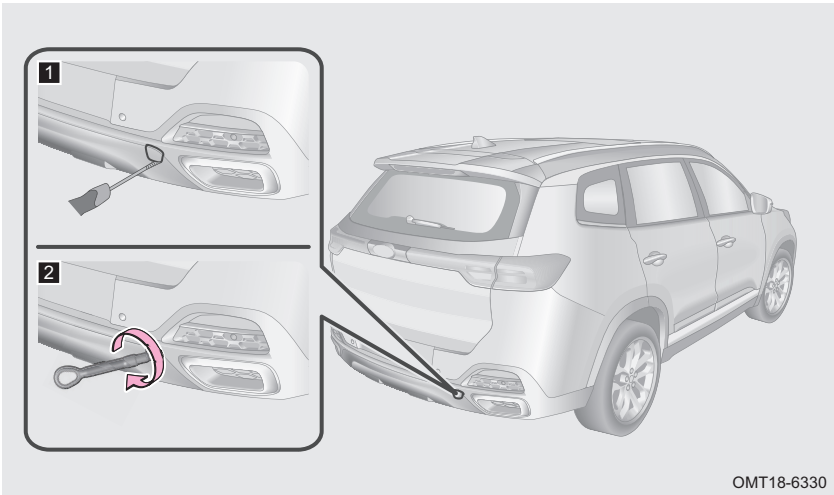


Front installation position of towing eyelet is located on the bottom of front right side of the vehicle.

1 Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

2 Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

■ Rear installation position of towing eyelet



Rear installation position of towing eyelet is located on the bottom of rear right side of the vehicle.

1 Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the towing eyelet hole cover;

2 Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

CAUTION

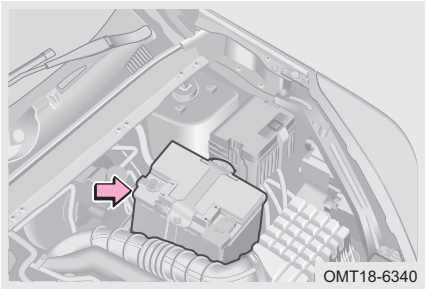
- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Towing rope or towing bar can only be installed while towing eyelet installed in place.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.

WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-6. Removing Battery

Removing Battery


OMT18-6340

The following steps must be taken when removing and installing the battery:

1. Turn off all electrical appliances and engine start stop switch;
2. Open the hood;
3. Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;
4. Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;
5. Remove the battery holder and the battery;
6. Install a new battery that has same specification as used one. Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removing.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

The used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead and should not be disposed of at will. Please handle according to the local laws and regulations or discard at a local qualified waste disposal station.

CAUTION

Be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both electrodes of the battery at the same time or unintentionally touching the positive electrode and the vehicle body at the same time.

WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery acid is strongly corrosive. Do not lean the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (soap), and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately, if necessary.

6-7. If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally

Simple Checks

If engine can not start, make sure you have followed the correct starting procedures given in "4-2. Starting Engine" and check if fuel is sufficient.

If engine does not run or engine speed is low:

1. Check if battery terminals are tight and clean;
2. If battery terminals are connected properly, turn on and observe the headlights, if the light is dim, battery is discharged, and you may try jump starting. If engine still cannot start, the starting system may be malfunctioning, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

If engine runs at normal speed but will not start:

1. Turn engine start stop switch to OFF or ACC mode and try starting engine again;
2. If the engine cannot be started, it may cause fuel to overflow due to repeat starting. Try procedures in "Starting a Flooded Engine";
3. If engine still cannot start, other malfunctions may occur in vehicle. Please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Starting a Flooded Engine

If the engine cannot be started, it may cause fuel to overflow due to repeat starting. Turn off engine start stop switch, and try again after several minutes. If engine still cannot start after retry, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the starter, starting operation should not exceed 15 seconds each time.
- If engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-8. Jump-starting

Jump-starting

To avoid vehicle damage or personal injury due to improper operation, if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.

⚠ CAUTION

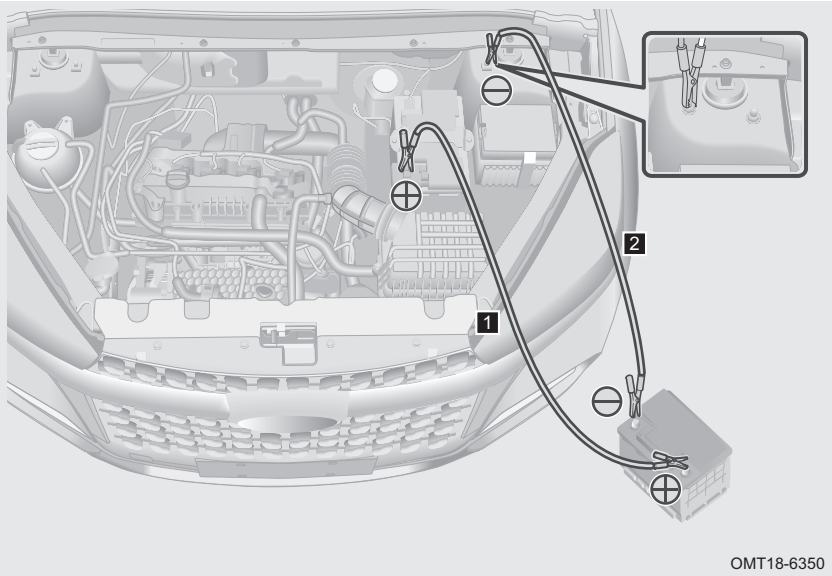
- When connecting jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or drive belt.
- Battery voltage used for jump starting should be 12 - 13 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage is correct.

⚠ WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Never get close the battery when starting.
- Do not use cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

Jump-starting Procedures

1. Turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances. If booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure no contact between vehicles.
2. Connect cables in order shown in illustration below;



1 Connect positive (+) terminal of discharged battery to positive (+) terminal of supporting vehicle battery via positive cable.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative (-) terminal of supporting vehicle battery, and then connect the other end of the cable to unpainted metallic part of discharged engine to secure the jumper cable and avoid contacting the running components in engine compartment.

3. If engine in vehicle with booster battery is not running when jump-starting, start and run it for several minutes, put the shift lever to P position and depress the accelerator pedal slightly;

4. Disconnect cables in reverse order of connecting (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

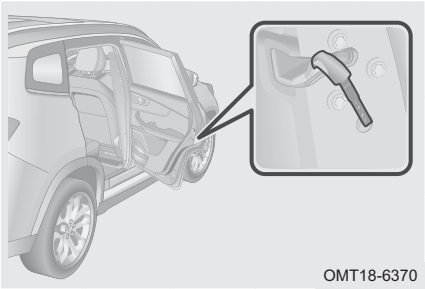
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not lean the battery when connecting.
- Do not connect cable to or near any part that moves when engine cranks.
- Never allow the clamps of the jumper cable to contact with each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- If the first starting attempt is not successful, check that if clamps on jumper cables are tight and restart the engine in normal way. If it cannot start still, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-9. Door Mechanical Switch

Mechanical Switch

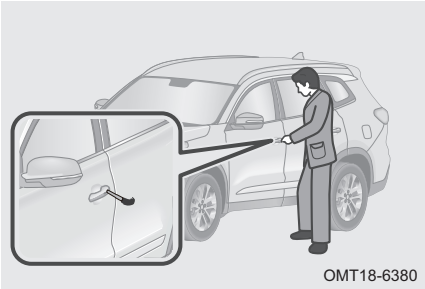
■ Locking front right door and rear doors manually


OMT18-6370

Vehicle can not be locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions, in this case, the doors can be locked with emergency locking function.

1. Open the door;
2. Remove the rubber protective film from the door panel edge lock body;
3. Pressing down the yellow lock knob with key tip, thus the locking operation on one-side door can be achieved;
4. Attach the rubber protective film and close the door;
5. Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked;
6. Lock other doors according to above steps if necessary (this function does not include the front left door).

■ Unlocking and locking driver's door manually


OMT18-6380

Insert the mechanical key into small hole under front left door handle cover and rotate the key upward. After prying off the cover, insert the mechanical key into the front left door key hole, turn clockwise to lock the door, counterclockwise to unlock the door.

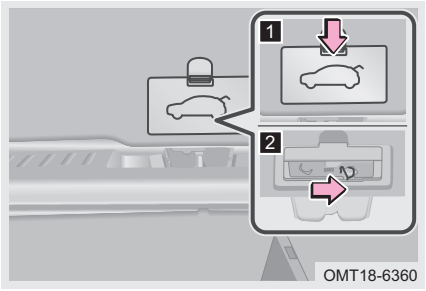
⚠ CAUTION

- If above problems occur, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection as soon as possible.
- When locking the vehicle in emergency due to power off, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6-10.Back Door Emergency Opening

Emergency Opening

■ Back door emergency opening method



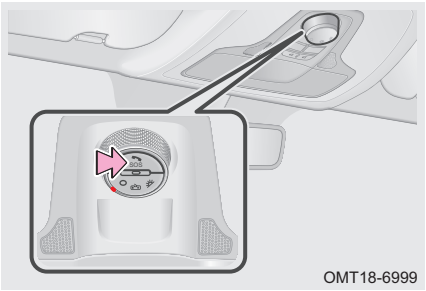
- Back door emergency device switch is located on the back door inner garnish.
- In the event of power off, back door cannot be opened by back door switch or smart key, or other unexpected situations, the persons in vehicle can use the back door emergency device switch to open the back door and leave vehicle quickly.

Operation method:

1. Stop the vehicle steadily as much as possible;
2. Fold the rear seatback;
3. Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;
4. Move the emergency device switch to the right with hand, release it, and then push the back door up to open it.

6-11.ERA-GLONASS (If Equipped)

ERA-GLONASS



ERA-GLONAS is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

7-1. Service Arrangements

Service Arrangements ...312
Service List 312
Service Requests 312

7-2. If You Need Help

Service Satisfaction 312

7-3. Service of Chery Authorized Service Station

7-4. Communicate Information

7-1. Service Arrangements

Service Arrangements

When visit Chery authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provides informations for later troubleshooting.

Service List

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

Service Requests

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

7-2. If You Need Help

Service Satisfaction

Chery and its authorized service stations are committed to your satisfaction with their products and services. Driving your Chery vehicle happily is important to us. If any complaint, please:

- Communicate with you service advisor at Chery authorized service station on your complaint to settle. Your advisor has professional knowledge to resolve your concerns quickly.
- In the event that you are still not satisfied, have the service manager handle with that.
- If your complaint cannot be resolved at the station, please contact the after-sales service department of Chery international.

7-3. Service of Chery Authorized Service Station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. only supplies OEM parts to Chery authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts of Chery authorized service station can be used.

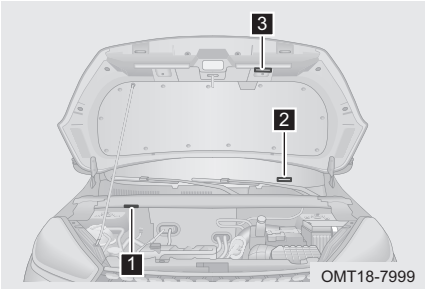
Chery authorized service station is service professionals and is exclusively authorized by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to satisfy your needs.

7-4. Communicate Information

Information sent to the After-Sales Service Department of Chery International should include the followings:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number
- Owner's e-mail
- Service station name of sale and service
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

■ Vehicle identification number location on real-vehicle



1 Vehicle identification number is printed on lower right of hood rain gutter molding.

2 Vehicle identification number is located on upper left of instrument panel driver side and can be seen from outside through the windshield.

3 Vehicle identification number is located on engine hood as shown in illustration.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Do not cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

- Vehicle delivery date and current odometer reading
- Vehicle service record
- An accurate description of the malfunction and the conditions under which it occurs

MAINTENANCE

8-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance 316

8-2. Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance 317
Engine Compartment Overview 318
Checking Engine Oil Level 318
Checking Transmission Oil Level 320
Checking Brake Fluid Level 320
Checking Coolant Level 321
Checking Radiator and Condenser 322
Checking Drive Belt 323
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure 323
Checking Tires 325
Tire Rotation 325
Checking Battery 326
Checking Generator 326
Adding Windshield Washer Fluid 327
Checking Wiper Blades 327
Replacing Wiper Blades 329
Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter 330
Light Position 330
Headlight Leveling Adjustment 332

8-3. Cleaning and Maintaining Vehicle

Exterior Maintenance 332
Glossy Metal Maintenance 334
Alloy Wheel Maintenance 334
Vehicle Bottom Maintenance 335
Rusty Prevention 335
Interior Maintenance 336
Cleaning Interior Decoration and Interior Trim 337

8-4. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Card 338
Maintenance Schedule 340

8-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

The service interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the total odometer reading or maintenance time, whichever comes first. For details, please refer to the maintenance manual.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Failure to perform the required maintenance items may cause damage to the vehicle.

■ Daily check

- Check the operation of all the exterior and interior lights. Replace any bulbs that are inoperative or dim, and check that all the lampshades are clean.
- Visually check for proper tire pressure and tire wear or damage.

■ Monthly check

- Warm up the engine fully and wait for 5 minutes. Then turn it off and check the engine oil level. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on a level ground will help to improve the accuracy of oil level reading. Add engine oil if level is below "MIN" mark.
- Check the battery. Clean and tighten the battery terminals if necessary.
- Check the levels of coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), washer fluid and brake fluid, and add if necessary.
- Check all the electrical appliances for proper operation.

■ Quarterly check

- Check the exhaust system.
- Check the brake line and hoses.
- Check the suspension components.
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.

8-2. Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures given in this section if you do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simpler maintenance instructions that users can perform by themselves, but there are still many items that must be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

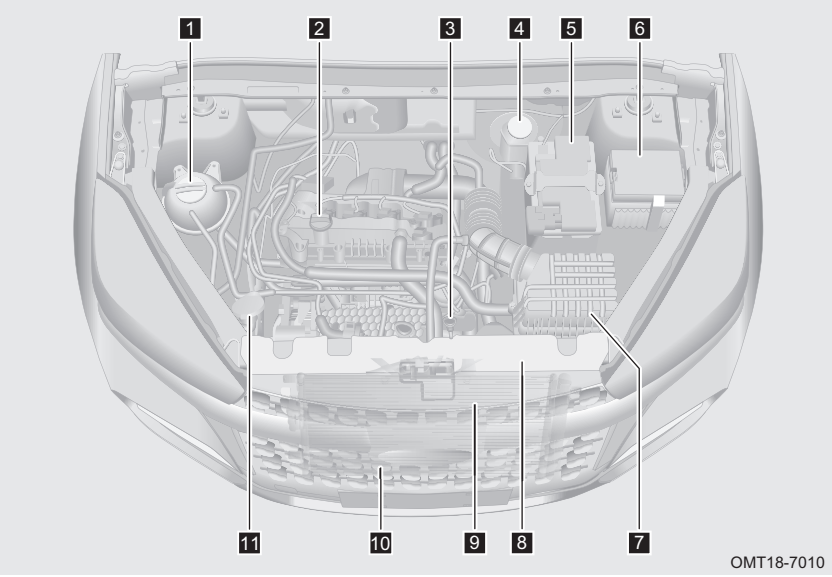
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not fill excessive engine oil as this may cause engine failure.
- Do not drive with the air filter removed, or excessive engine wear could occur.
- Check if the tools, cotton, etc. are left in the cabin before closing the engine hood.
- Correctly add coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- Do not smoke around fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the engine start stop switch is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent the clothes (ties) from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because of the cooling fun may automatically start and run at any time.

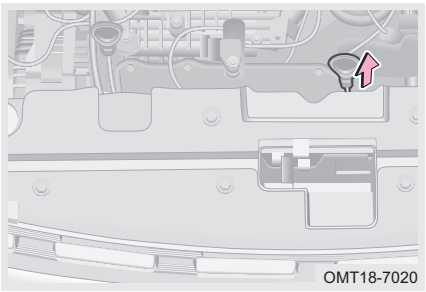
Engine Compartment Overview



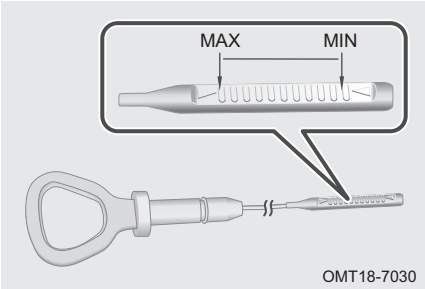
1 Coolant reservoir
2 Engine oil filler cap
3 Engine oil dipstick
4 Brake fluid reservoir
5 Battery
6 Engine compartment fuse and relay box
7 Air filter case
8 Condenser
9 Cooling fan
10 Radiator
11 Washer fluid reservoir

Checking Engine Oil Level

With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.



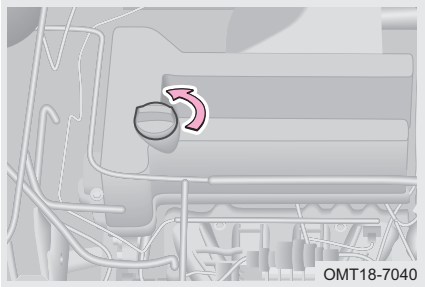
1. Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine.
2. Open the engine hood, pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly.
4. Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull the dipstick out again and check if oil level is proper.
5. Repeat above steps 3 times to improve the accuracy of inspection.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

■ Adding engine oil



1. Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it.
2. Use the funnel to add a proper amount of engine oil and check the oil level with a dipstick again.
3. When the level reaches within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in the household rubbish and sewer or on the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please handle it according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

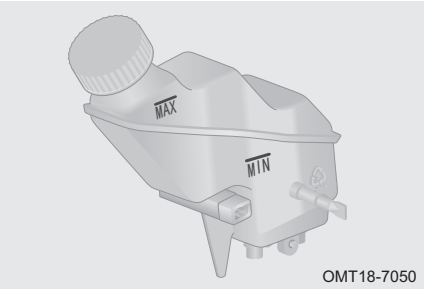
CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- If the engine oil is replaced, the oil filter must be replaced.
- Only use the engine oil recommended by Chery. For detailed information about engine oil capacity and type, please refer to "9-2. Vehicle Specifications".
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be inverted after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, or the oil flowing through seal ring will overflow automatically after reassembly, resulting in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Oil Level

Checking, adding and replacement of transmission oil should be performed by professionals, please contact the Chery authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level reaches the "MIN" mark or below, add brake fluid and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- As the brake fluid has high water absorbability, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only brake fluid recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.
- If some brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes, or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level



When engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level reaches the "MIN" mark or below, add coolant and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

■ Adding coolant

1. When the engine is cold, open the coolant reservoir cap, and add coolant until reaching "MAX" mark.
2. Start and run the engine to a normal temperature. Observe the coolant level in the reservoir all the time, if the level falls below "MIN" mark, add coolant to an appropriate level until the coolant level does not fall down again.
3. Turn off engine and check if coolant level is correct after engine cools down. If not, repeat above operations until level is normal.
4. Install the coolant reservoir cap securely.

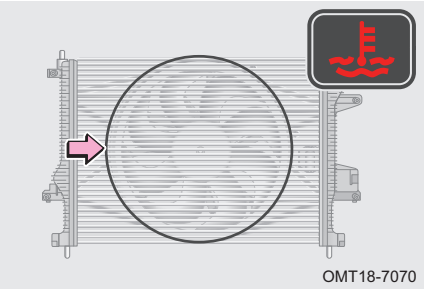
CAUTION

- If coolant level falls down too fast, check radiator, hose and water pump for leakage.
- Only coolant recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at user's own risk.
- Do not use coolant with poor quality, because the engine will become excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.

WARNING

- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant radiator cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.
- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the liquid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets onto your skin or into eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water and consult a doctor immediately.

Checking Radiator and Condenser



After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at the time.

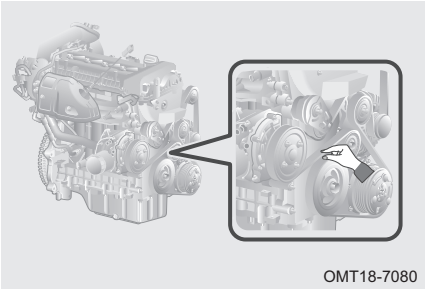
Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant. Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury. Clean the radiator only when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Drive Belt



OMT18-7080

Drive belt will be extended after using for a period of time, and the belt tension is not enough, which may damage the vehicle, so it is necessary to regularly check the belt tension.

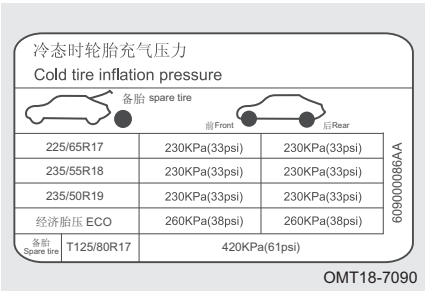
Checking drive belt tension:

1. Turn off the engine start stop switch;
2. Twist the belt with your fingers to check the rotation angle of belt;
3. If rotation angle is more than 90°, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ WARNING

When checking the drive belt tension, turn off the engine and cool it down to ensure that the engine belt is static.

Checking Tire Inflation Pressure



225/65R17	230KPa(33psi)	230KPa(33psi)
235/55R18	230KPa(33psi)	230KPa(33psi)
235/50R19	230KPa(33psi)	230KPa(33psi)
经济胎压 ECO	260KPa(38psi)	260KPa(38psi)
备胎 Spare tire	T125/80R17	420KPa(61psi)

OMT18-7090

You should check the tire inflation pressure at least once a month (spare tire included) and correct the pressure as required.

For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar (subject to actual vehicle) for details.

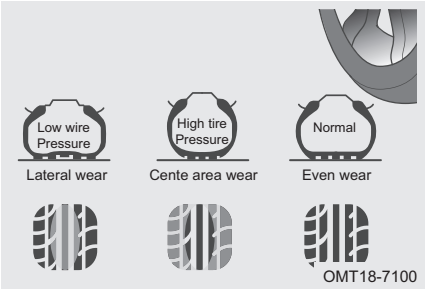
Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure.

CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- Tire pressure monitoring system (if equipped) can monitor tire pressure in real time (For details, please refer to "4-15. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)").
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones immediately.

WARNING

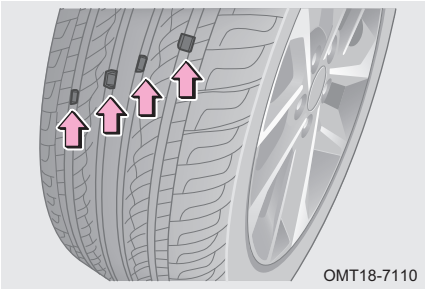
Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident, causing death or serious injury:



- Excessive wear;
- Uneven wear;
- Poor handling;
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires;
- Poor sealing of the tire bead;
- Wheel deformation or tire separation;
- A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

Checking Tires

Check if there are any cuts, foreign matters and uneven wear on tire tread.



Check the tire tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tire seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.

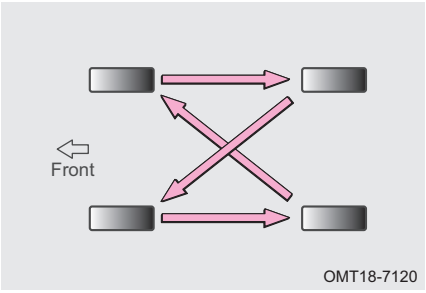
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Please never discard a disposed tire carelessly. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

CAUTION

If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, Chery recommends that you should rotate your tires approximately every 10,000 km (best adjustment range is 5,000-7,000 km). The tire rotation cycle may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

For detailed information about tire replacement procedures, please refer to "6-2. If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving".

READ

- Please contact the Chery authorized service station to perform tire rotation for vehicles with tire pressure monitoring function.
- It is recommended to check and adjust the four wheel alignment during the first maintenance. Perform inspection and adjustment every 20,000 km (This is a regular maintenance item, not covered by claim).

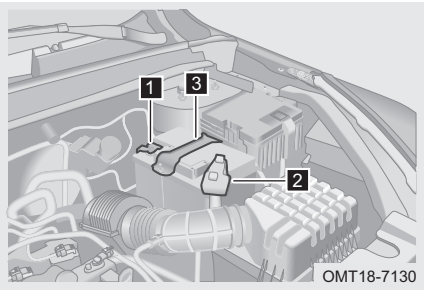
WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may affect handling performance, which may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

- Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
- Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
- Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Do not mix tires with different manufacturers, models or tread patterns.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Speedometer is affected by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by claim.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, outside cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.



1 Battery negative terminal
2 Battery positive terminal
3 Hold-down clamp

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We recommend that you should go to a Chery authorized service station for battery replacement.

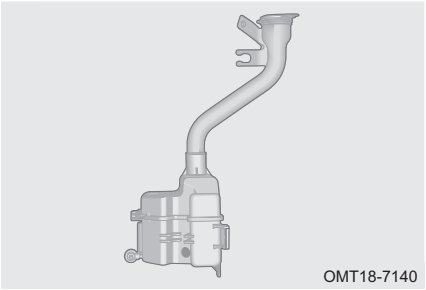
CAUTION

Before turning off vehicle power or locking the vehicle, make sure that the electrical appliances of vehicle are turned off, to prevent the vehicle from being unable to start normally due to battery power loss.

Checking Generator

Driving for a long period may cause the tightening torque of generator terminal nut to decrease. To ensure the normal operation of generator, please go to the Chery authorized service station for inspection and tightening every 10,000 km after the first 20,000 km.

Adding Windshield Washer Fluid

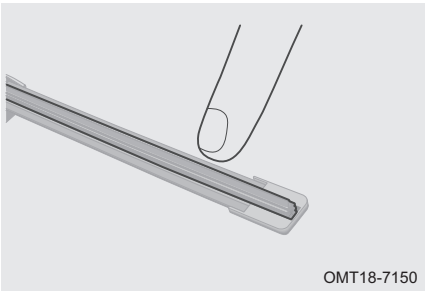

OMT18-7140

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, as antifreeze will damage the paint.
- Do not use plain water as washer fluid when temperature is below freezing point. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.

Checking Wiper Blades


OMT18-7150

Check the roughness of wiper blade on its end using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up.
- When there are pits on the windshield that struck by gravel, please maintain it timely.
- In winter, make sure that the wipers are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.

■ Maintaining wiper blades

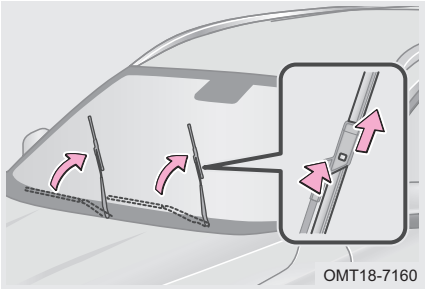
- Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be damaged.
- In order to prevent the formation of schlieren, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
- After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
- For safety, it is recommended to replace the wiper blades 1 to 2 times a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at Chery authorized service station.
- Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
- When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

■ Using wipers

- Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
- When there are snow, leaves, branch and other objects on the windshield, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
- Washer fluid should be added on time, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
- In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before use. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before use. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and wiper blades. Unfreezing method: Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to heat. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

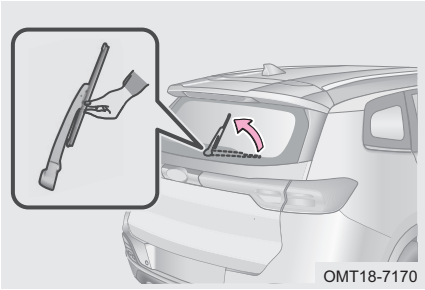
Replacing Wiper Blades

■ Replacing front wiper blades

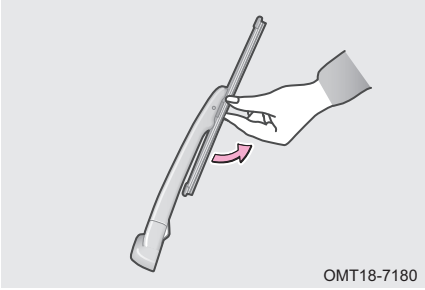


1. Operate the front wiper switch within 3 seconds after turning off the engine start stop switch, and the wiper will automatically raises to the stop position;
2. Lift the front wiper arm;
3. Pull up wiper blades while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;
4. Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure the hold-down clamp is locked firmly;
5. Check that front wipers work properly.

■ Replacing rear wiper blades



1. Lift the rear wiper arm;



2. Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;
3. Install the new wiper blade in reverse order, and be sure to install it in place;
4. Check that rear wipers work properly.

READ

The replacement of rear wiper blades should be performed by professionals, please contact the Chery authorized service station.

Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If operational efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter element and replace it as necessary.

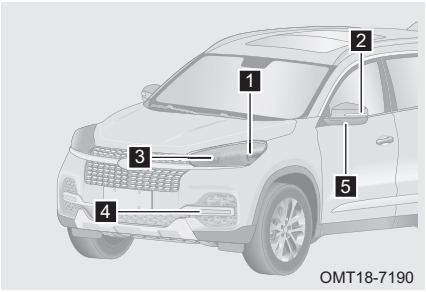
It is recommended to check air conditioning filter every 3 months or 5,000 km at Chery authorized service station, and replace it if necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact the Chery authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.

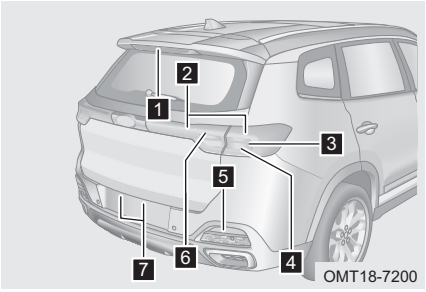
Light Position

■ Front light position



1 High/Low beam lights
2 Side turn signal lights
3 Turn signal lights
4 Daytime running lights
5 Door shadow lights (if equipped)

■ Rear light position



1 High mounted stoplights
2 Position lights
3 Back-up lights
4 Stop lights
5 Back-up lights
6 Rear fog lights
7 License plate lights

■ Light bulb model

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	12 V HB3 (Halogen Light)/ 12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Fog Lights	12 V P21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Daytime Running Lights	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front Position Lights	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Position Lights	13.5 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Stop Lights	12 V P21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
High Mounted Stoplights	13.5 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Back-up Lights	12 V W16W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Lights	12 V PY21W (Halogen Light)/ 12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Lights	12 V PY21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Lights	13.5 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
License Plate Lights	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station

Headlight Leveling Adjustment

It is directly related to driving safety if adjustment of headlight beam is correct. Therefore, it is only allowed to adjust light beam by using special instrument, please pay attention to legal rules. Always adjust headlight beam at the Chery authorized service station.

8-3. Cleaning and Maintaining Vehicle

Exterior Maintenance

■ Basic precautions for maintaining exterior

When using any chemical detergent or glazing agent, please read all warnings and precautions on the label first. Be sure to follow the instructions on the label.

■ Exterior washing

Washing materials should not be discarded to household waste. Please use local designated waste disposal facilities.

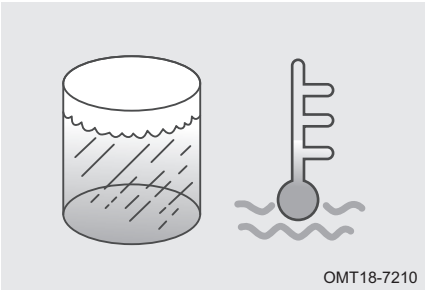
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

- Use a car wash area with no damage to the ecological drainage system.
- The most important factor in protecting paint surface is to use plain water.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to plastic components, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergent to clean plastic components.
- Pay attention when washing the vehicle side windows. Especially when washing with high pressure water, it will permeate through the door windows, and the interior will be wet.
- Do not use strong soaps, chemical cleaners or hot water, or wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body is hot.

■ Washing water


OMT18-7210

Only cold or lukewarm water can be used to wash vehicle.

■ Brushless washing

The best way to wash vehicle is brushless washing. In high pressure water operated car wash, the strong water flow may be sprayed into the vehicle.

■ Manual washing

If washing liquid is used, rinse the vehicle with large amount of plain water, and wipe it with a dry cloth.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> After washing the vehicle, depress the brake pedal for several times during driving to clear up the water in the brake disc.

■ High pressure washing

When washing the vehicle with a high pressure cleaner, be sure to follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the high pressure cleaner, paying particular attention to the working pressure and washing distance. It is strictly forbidden to use a high pressure washer or a rotary nozzle to directly spray rubber and plastic strips, such as door window weatherstrip.

■ Cleaning headlights

To avoid damaging the headlight plastic lens, do not use invasive abrasives or chemical solvents. Do not wipe the light when it is dry, and avoid cleaning the lens with sharp objects. Do not use a high pressure water gun to wash rear part of headlights to prevent the lights from entering water.

■ Cleaning rear windshield

When cleaning rear windshield glass, only use a soft cloth for wiping to avoid damaging heated component. Do not clean the inside of rear windshield glass with solvents or sharp objects.

■ Cleaning wheels

Cleaning of the wheels should be performed according to mileage. It is recommended to clean the wheels once a week to avoid dust retention during braking. Use wheel cleaner, warm water and a soft sponge to clean the wheels. Never use abrasive materials to avoid damage to the tire surface and rims.

■ Cleaning products

For best results, use car care products properly.

■ Paint surface waxing

Do not allow water bead on the paint surface when waxing, and use high quality liquid or paste wax and follow the instructions from manufacturer. All metal strips should be waxed to maintain their brightness. Removal of oil, tar, etc. with stain remover will damage the wax layer. It is necessary to apply wax again on these areas.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Wiping off dust or dirt from body with a dry cloth can damage the paint surface.
> - Do not use steel wool, scrubbing agents or strong detergents containing high alkali or corrosive agents to clean chrome-plated or anodized aluminum components, otherwise, it may cause damage to protective layer and discoloration or deterioration to the paint surface.

■ Stripping treatment

For paint surface damage or slight abrasions caused by road gravels, please go to the Chery authorized service station for treatment.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> To protect the durability of painted surface, timely remove the things that are harmful to the paint surface, such as birds droppings, resin, insect residue, oil stains, road snow removal salt and industrial float, etc.

Glossy Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects, etc. Do not use scrapers or sharp objects.
- Apply a layer of wax or chrome-plated protective agent and polish it to protect the surface of glossy metal from corrosion.
- In cold weather or coastal areas, apply a thicker wax or protective agent to the glossy metal components. If necessary, apply non-corrosive petrolatum or other protective agents.

Alloy Wheel Maintenance

Alloy wheels need regular maintenance to maintain aesthetics. In particular, it is necessary to periodically remove the anti-slip salt and brake wear debris on the wheels. The alloy wheels must be cleaned with acid-free cleaner, otherwise the surface smoothness will be affected. Do not handle the wheels with vehicle polish or other abrasives. If the surface of alloy wheel is damaged (such as stone strike), the damaged area must be repaired in time.

Every two weeks:

- Clean the wheel with acid-free cleaner.
- Clean the anti-slip salt and brake wear debris on alloy wheels.

Every three months:

- Apply hard wax to the wheels.

Vehicle Bottom Maintenance

- It is used to remove snow and corrosive substances that adhere to the bottom of the vehicle. If these substances are not removed in time, the rust on vehicle bottom components such as fuel line, frame, floor and exhaust system will be accelerated even if rust-proofing has been done.
- Wash the bottom of vehicle and the inside of wheel house at least once a month with warm or cold water, especially in the field and at the end of each winter, pay special attention to these areas, because the mud and dirt in these areas are not easy to see. Only splashing the dust with water cannot remove them completely, which may cause greater danger. The lower edge of door, the lower part of front windshield and the frame all have drain holes, which should be unobstructed without any blockage. If water is accumulated in these areas, rust may occur.

Rusty Prevention

■ Keeping the vehicle clean

- The best way to prevent rust is to keep the vehicle clean and remove the materials that may cause rust to vehicle. It is important to pay special attention to the bottom of vehicle.
- If the area you live in is easy to produce rusting materials, such as salt roads, offshore, industrial pollution areas, acid rain area, etc., you need to strengthen the rust prevention measures. In winter, clean the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and always clean up the bottom of the vehicle after winter.
- When cleaning the bottom of vehicle, pay special attention to the components at the bottom of fender and other pars that are difficult to access. Only wetting the dust without thoroughly washing will accelerate the rust rather than prevent rust, which cannot thoroughly remove the materials. High pressure water and steam are particularly effective in removing dust and rust.
- When cleaning the lower part of door, the lower part of front windshield and the frame member, the drain hole should be kept clear to facilitate the draining of water and moisture without leaving inside to accelerate rust.

■ Keeping the garage dry

Never park the vehicle in a damp, poorly-ventilated garage where can provide an advantage for rusting the vehicle.

■ Keeping the paint surface and garnishes in good condition

- Scratches or bumps should be covered immediately with scratch repair paint to reduce the possibility of rust. If the metal is exposed, it is recommended to repair at Chery authorized service station.

- Bird dropping: Bird droppings are highly corrosive substances, which can damage the paint surface within a few hours. Remove it as soon as possible.

■ To prevent neglecting the interior

- Moisture may accumulate under the floor mat and under the carpet, causing corrosion. Check the condition under floor mat regularly to ensure that the carpet is dry.
- Take special care when transporting fertilizer, cleaning materials or chemicals by vehicle. Please use appropriate containers to transport these items. If these items are spilled or leaked, clean and rinse with plain water, and dry thoroughly.

Interior Maintenance

■ Basic precautions for interior maintenance

Prevent corrosive solutions such as perfume, glue or make-up oil from coming into contact with the instrument panel, which can cause damage or fading to the interior. If they come into contact with the instrument panel, remove them immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (such as steering wheel, seat, etc.), use a neutral detergent or a solution with low alcohol content. If a solution with high alcohol content or an acid/alkaline cleaner is used, the leather may be discolored or peeled.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow water or other liquids to come into contact with electrical connectors or electronic components inside the vehicle, as this may damage electrical or electronic components.

Cleaning Interior Decoration and Interior Trim

■ Plastic products

Use a dust brush or vacuum cleaner to remove dust and loose dirt from plastic products, and clean the surface of plastic products with a plastic cleaner.

■ Fiber part

Use a small duster or vacuum cleaner to remove dust and loose dirt from the fiber cloth, then use a neutral soap solution to clean the interior decoration or carpet. If new stains are found, immediately remove them with fiber stain cleaner. Otherwise, it may cause dirt to intrude into the fiber and affect its color. If the fiber material is not properly maintained, the fire resistance will reduce.

⚠ WARNING

Improper handling can affect the appearance, color and fire resistance of the fiber.

■ Cleaning the seat belt

Use a neutral soap solution to clean the seat belt. Please follow the instructions from manufacturer. Do not bleach or stain the seat belt as it will weaken the seat belt performance.

■ Cleaning the interior of door window glass

If the inside surface of vehicle glass is blurred (ie, covered in oil, grease or wax film), it should be cleaned with a glass detergent. Observe the instructions on glass detergent container.

8-4. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Card

Maintenance card for the first 5,000 km (within 6 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)	
Date	
Mileage	
Using properties	
License plate number	
Ownerinformation	
Name	
Address	
Telephone number	
Job	
E-Mail	
Delivery date	
License plate number	
Vehicle data	
Vehicle identification number (VIN)	
Engine number	
Transmission number	
Options	
Authorized service station seal	
Owner signature	

Maintenance card for the first 5,000 km (within 6 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date:_____ Mileage: _____				
Check Items	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y ☐	N ☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y ☐	N ☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y ☐	N ☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y ☐	N ☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y ☐	N ☐
	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y ☐	N ☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y ☐	N ☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y ☐	N ☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y ☐	N ☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to Chery authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, maintenance interval is 10,000 km or 12 months (whichever comes first) after first maintenance is performed.

If you vehicles always used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

For severe driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	**Months**	**6**	**12**	**18**	**24**	**30**	**36**	**42**	**48**	**54**	**60**
	Km×1,000	**5**	**10**	**15**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	**Months**	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**	**108**	**120**
	Km×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**	**90**	**100**
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For severe driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Fluid (MT)		Replace every 1 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid (CVT)		40,000 km for the first time, no need to replace after that.									
Transmission Fluid (6DCT)		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Transmission Fluid (7DCT)		Replace every 60,000 km.									
Power Steering Fluid (If Equipped)		Replace every 2 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel Filter		External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type (troubleshoot the cause of failure)									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For severe driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									
Spark Plug		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive Belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line (such as steering, brake, fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Timing Belt (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 100,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Timing Chain (If Equipped)		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Battery		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Throttle Valve		It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.									

For severe driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Four-wheel Alignment		Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.									
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe		It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (which ever comes first).									
Refueling Hose of Fuel		It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.									

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32°C), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.
- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

* Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).

SPECIFICATIONS

9-1. Vehicle Identification Number

Vehicle Identification Number 346

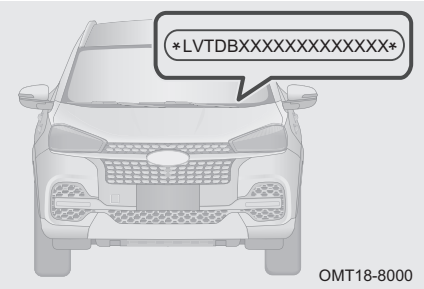
9-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Model and Type 348
Vehicle Dimensions 349
Vehicle Weight 350
Vehicle Performance 352
Engine Performance 352
Fuel System 353
Lubrication System 354
Cooling System 356
Suspension System 356
Steering System 357
Brake System 358
Wheel Alignment 359
Wheel and Tire 360
Transmission Fluid 361
Gearbox Parameters..... 361
Windshield Washer 362
Battery 362

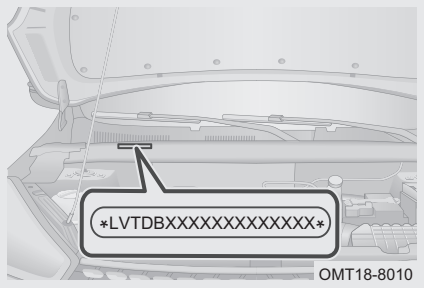
9-1. Vehicle Identification Number

Vehicle Identification Number

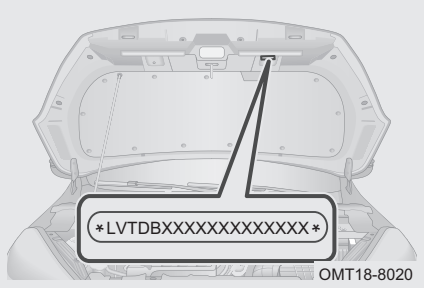
■ Vehicle identification number on actual vehicle



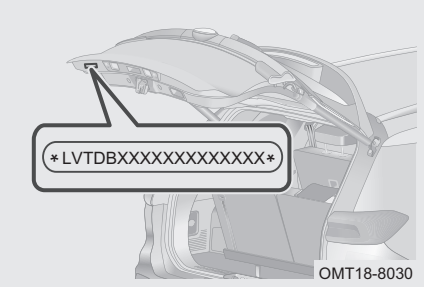
VIN is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the windshield.



VIN is stamped on right of engine compartment drip channel garnish.



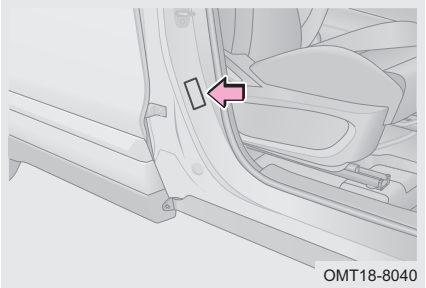
VIN is located on hood as shown in the illustration.



VIN is located on back door as shown in the illustration.

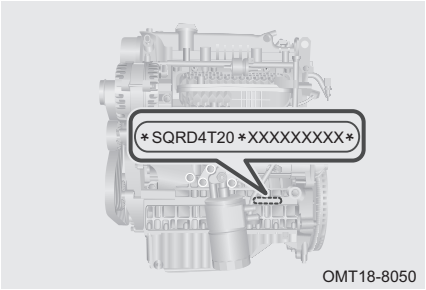
> **CAUTION**
>
> It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

■ Vehicle data plate

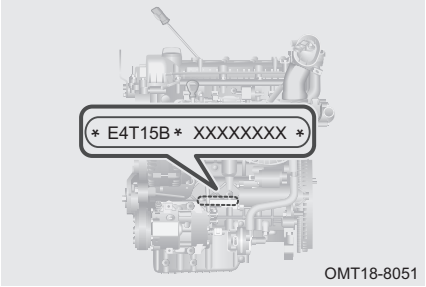


Vehicle data plate is fixed on right quarter outer panel.

■ Main part number

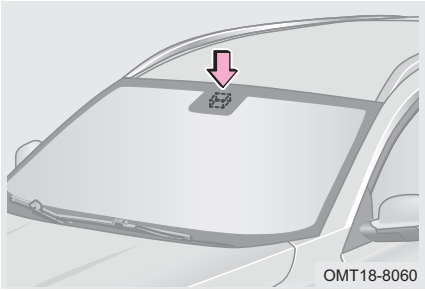


Engine number (2.0T) is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.



Engine number (1.5T) is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

■ Microwave window



The microwave window refers to the area reserved for wireless RF signal transmission on the front windshield of vehicle, where is for installation of automotive electronic identification. The microwave window is located at left side on back of front windshield inside rear view mirror.

9-2. Vehicle Specifications

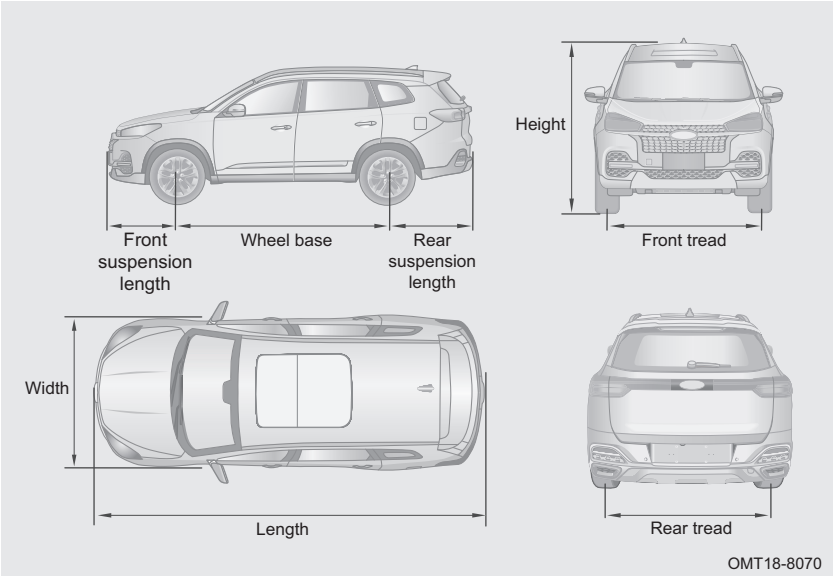
Vehicle Model and Type

Vehicle model and type are as shown in chart 1.

Chart 1 Vehicle Model and Type

Vehicle Model	2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, three-box, five-door, five-seat or seven-seat, integral body, left-hand drive		
Engine Model	SQRD4T20	SQRE4T15B/ SQRE4T15C	SQRF4J16
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler		
Fuel Supply Type	Multiport sequential electronic gasoline injection		Direct injection
Transmission Model	025CHC	621MHB/625DHB	730DHB

Vehicle Dimensions



Major dimension parameters for vehicle are as shown in chart 2.

Chart 2 Major Dimension Parameters for Vehicle

Vehicle Model		2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,700	4,700	4,700
	Width (mm)	1,860	1,860	1,860
	Height (mm)	1,705	1,705	1,705
Wheel Base (mm)		2,710	2,710	2,710
Tread	Front (mm)	1,582	1,582	1,582
	Rear (mm)	1,604	1,604	1,604
Overhang	Front (mm)	890	890	890
	Rear (mm)	1,100	1,100	1,100

Vehicle Weight

Weight parameters and seating capacity for vehicle are as shown in chart 3.

Curb weight refers to the weight that the vehicle can travel, it contains coolant, grease, fuel tank filled to 90%, tools, spare wheels. The effective load is the total weight minus the curb weight, and the optional and subsequent additional equipment will reduce the effective load.

Chart 3 Weight Parameters and Seating Capacity for Vehicle

Items		Parameters		
Vehicle Model		2.0TCI		1.6TGDI
Vehicle Model		T31F-PL4BL50E010T	T31F-PL4BL70E010T	/
Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,541	1,556	1,587
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	881	876	905
	Rear Axle (kg)	660	680	682
Manufacturer Maximum Loaded Weight (Including passengers) (kg)		375	525	2,243
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		1,916	2,081	2,143
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	1,006	968	1,009
	Rear Axle (kg)	910	1,113	1,134
Seating Capacity (Including driver) (Person)		5	7	7

Items		Parameters		
Vehicle Model		1.5 TCI		
Vehicle Model		T31F-PL4BL51E122M	T31F-PL4BL71E122M	T31F-PL4BL71E121T
Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,481	1,515	1,541
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	813	821	846
	Rear Axle (kg)	668	694	695
Manufacturer Maximum Loaded Weight (Including passengers) (kg)		375	525	525
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,104	2,104	2,104
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	961	937	937
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,143	1,167	1,167
Seating Capacity (Including driver) (Person)		5	7	7

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load (if applicable) specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an accident.

Vehicle Performance

Major performance indexes (parameters) for vehicle are as shown in chart 4.

Chart 4 Major Performance Indexes (Parameters) for Vehicle

Items			Parameters		
Vehicle Model			2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		145	145	145
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)		11.2	11.2	11.2
	Approach Angle (°)		20	20	20
	Departure Angle (°)		23	23	17
	Ramp Angle	Unladen (°)	20	20	20
		Laden (°)	16	16	16
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)		180	190	200
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		45	45	47

Engine Performance

Performance indexes (parameters) for engine are as shown in chart 5.

Chart 5 Engine Performance Indexes (Parameters)

Engine Model	SQRD4T20	SQRE4T15B	SQRE4T15C	SQRF4J16
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	83.5	77	77	77
Piston Stroke (mm)	90	80.5	80.5	85.8
Displacement (mL)	1,971	1,498	1,498	1,598
Compression Ratio	9.5 : 1	9.5 : 1	9.5 : 1	9.9 : 1
Power Rating (kw)	125	108	115	145
Rated Power Speed (r/min)	5,500	5,500	5,500	5,500
Maximum Torque (N·m)	250	210	230	290
Maximum Torque Speed (r/min)	2,000-4,500	1,750-4,000	1,750-4,000	2,000-4,000

Fuel System

Fuel system parameters are as shown in chart 6.

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong oil, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

Chart 6 Fuel System

Engine Model		SQRD4T20	SQRE4T15B	SQRF4J16	SQRE4T15C
Fuel Type*1		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher			
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher			
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (Unleaded super gasoline)			
		E22-E100			
Fuel Tank	Type	Plastic fuel tank			
	Capacity	51 L			
Fuel Pump		Electric fuel pump			

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

■ Fuel selection

Only use fuel with grade (or higher) described in the chart.

CAUTION

- Using lower grade fuel will cause damage to engine.
- Only use unleaded gasoline. Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and exhaust system to function improperly.
- When open the fuel tank cap, you may hear a click, which is a normal pressure relief phenomenon.

WARNING

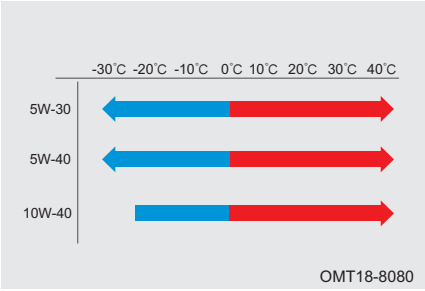
- Gasoline numbers lower than specified may not be used, as this will cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. So, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please contact the Chery authorized service station immediately.

Lubrication System

Lubrication system parameters are as shown in chart 7.

Chart 7 Lubrication System

Engine Model	SQRD4T20	SQRE4T15B/ SQRE4T15C	SQRF4J16
Oil Filling Amount: (Also replace the oil filter and lubricating oil)	4.7 ± 0.2 L		4.3 ± 0.2 L
Oil Grade	SM SAE-5W-30 SM SAE-5W-40 SM SAE-10W-40		SM SAE-5W-30



According to the requirements of ambient temperature in your area, select the oil with corresponding quality level in combination with the viscosity grade of oil on the table above.

Oil Grade Specifications	Oil Grade Definition
SM	Quality grade of oil
SAE	English abbreviation for American Society of Automotive Engineers
5W	The lower the viscosity at low temperature, the stronger the ability to adapt to the cold, and the better the low temperature start-up performance.
40	The higher the index of high temperature resistance, the higher the viscosity, suitable for high speed operation of the engine.

According to the requirements of the ambient temperature in your area, select the oil of the corresponding quality level in combination with the table above.

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, if the engine oil of SM SAE-10W-40 is used, the engine may be difficult to start. Therefore, it is recommended to use SM SAE-5W-30 or oil with lower viscosity grade. The SM SAE-5W-30 oil is recommended from the viewpoint of oil consumption.

When purchasing engine oil, be sure to verify that the purchased oil meets the engine oil standard and is approved by the company.

⚠ CAUTION

- Please use engine oil that meets specifications and requirements as shown in above chart, or it will cause damage to engine.
- The oil level should be between the upper and lower marks on the bottom of oil dipstick when refilling the engine oil.
- Do not use engine oil that does not meet the above specifications and requirements, and additives and engine treatment agents that have not been verified by the company. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged. Such damage is not covered under warranty.
- The engine oil used on your vehicle must meet the engine oil specifications listed in the table above. Using other types of engine oil may damage the engine!

Cooling System

Cooling system parameters are as shown in chart 8.

Chart 8 Cooling System

Vehicle Model	2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Radiator Type	Tube belt radiator	Tube belt radiator	Tube belt radiator
Coolant	Coolant capacity is 7.0 ± 0.5 L	Coolant capacity is 9.0 ± 0.5 L	Coolant capacity is 7.5 ± 0.5 L
Coolant Type	All organic antifreeze (LEC-II)		

Suspension System

Types of suspension system are as shown in chart 9.

Chart 9 Suspension System

Vehicle Model	2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber, w/ anti-roll stabilizer bar		
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber, w/ anti-roll stabilizer bar		

Steering System

Types of steering system are as shown in chart 10.

Chart 10 Steering System

Vehicle Model		2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Steering Wheel Diameter (mm)		374.5		
Power Steering Type		Electronic power assist		
Steering Gear Type		Pinion & rack steering gear		
Steering Column Type		Retractable energy-absorbing steering column		
Steering Wheel Adjustable Range	Up-down	3.6°	34 mm	34 mm
	Front-back (mm)	40	0/40mm	40 mm
Wheel Limit Position	Number of Steering Wheel Left Turns	1.4 turns		
	Number of Steering Wheel Right Turns	1.4 turns		

Brake System

Types of brake system are as shown in chart 11.

Chart 11 Brake System

Vehicle Model		2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Brake	Front Wheel	Disc brake		
	Rear Wheel	Disc brake		
Brake Booster		Vacuum booster		
Parking Brake		Electronic parking brake for rear wheels		
Brake Fluid		Fluid type: DOT-4. Add fluid to level between "MAX" and "MIN" marks		
Reasonable Range of Brake Pedal Free Travel		⩽ 25 mm		
Reasonable Range of Use for Brake Friction Pair		New front brake plate friction material thickness: 11.0 mm, use limit: 2.0 mm; New front brake disc thickness: 25 mm, use limit: 22.5 mm; New rear brake plate friction material thickness: 10.2 mm, use limit: 2 mm; New rear brake disc thickness: 10 mm, use limit: 8 mm.		

⚠ WARNING

In the case of heavy load, the brake fluid should be replaced while the brake pads are being replaced. When adding brake fluid, make sure it is absolutely clean. If any dirt gets into the brake system, it may result in loss of braking performance.

Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment parameters are as shown in chart 12.

Chart 12 Wheel Alignment

Items		Parameters		
Vehicle Model		2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-25' ± 45'		
	Kingpin Caster Angle	4°28' ± 60'		
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	13°43' ± 60'		
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5' ± 5'		
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	-42' ± 30'		
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	5' ± 10'		
Sideslip Value		⩽ 3 m/km		

Wheel and Tire

Tire and rim models, tire inflation pressure, tightening torque of wheel bolts and dynamic balance are as shown in chart 13.

Chart 13 Wheel and Tire

Vehicle Model		2.0TCI	1.5TCI	1.6TGDI
Tire Model		225/65 R17, 235/55R18, 235/50/R19, T125/80R17 (Spare tire)		
Rim Model		17x6.5J, 18×7.5J, 17×4T (Spare tire)		
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230		
	Rear Wheel	230		
	Spare Tire	420		
Tightening Torque of Wheel Nuts		130 ± 10 N·m		
Wheel Dynamic Balance Requirements for Vehicle with a Maximum Design Speed of More Than 100 km/h		Allowable residual dynamic unbalance quality: Card balance block side ⩽ 8 g, Paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g		

⚠ CAUTION

- Tire pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure values listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is not necessary to lower the pressure.
- If winter tyres are used, the pressure value listed in the above table should be increased by 20 kpa.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for inflation pressure.

Transmission Fluid

Transmission fluid capacity and type are as shown in chart 14.

Chart 14 Transmission Fluid

Transmission Type	Transmission Fuel Type	Capacity
025CHC	CVTF WCF-1	7.3 ± 0.2 L
621MHB	Flowserve GL-4 75W-90	2.5 ± 0.1 L
625DHB	Castrol BOT 350 M3 75W	1.2 ± 0.1 L
730DHB	Pentosin FFL-7A	4.32 ± 0.2 L

⚠ CAUTION

Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please contact Chery authorized service station for details.

Gearbox Parameters

Performance indexes (parameters) for gearbox are as shown in Chart 15.

Chart 15 Gearbox Performance Indexes (Parameters)

Transmission Model	025CHC
Speed Ratio Range	0.745
Final Reduction Gear Ratio	6.08

Transmission Type		621MHB
Type		Manual gear
Gear Position (Drive ratio)	1st Gear	3.538
	2nd Gear	1.913
	3rd Gear	1.31
	4th Gear	0.971
	5th Gear	0.818
	6Th Gear	0.619
	Reverse Gear	3.333
	Final Reduction Gear Ratio	4.562

Transmission Type		730DHB
Type		Automatic gear
Gear Position (Drive ratio)	1st Gear	4.462
	2nd Gear	2.824
	3rd Gear	1.594
	4th Gear	1.114
	5th Gear	0.851
	6Th Gear	0.771
	7Th Gear	0.638
	Reverse Gear	3.869
	Final Reduction Gear Ratio	3.789 (1/2/6/7)
		4.235 (3/4/5/R)

Windshield Washer

Windshield washer capacity and type are as shown in chart 16.

Chart 16 Windshield Washer

Name	Capacity
Washer Fluid	2.0 L/4.6 L

⚠ WARNING

- The antifreeze will corrode the painted surface, so take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during the addition of the glass washer.
- Do not mix water with the washer. Water may cause the solution to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.
- Using washer other than the specified may damage the washer system. Please use the washer recommended by Chery.

Battery

Battery model is as shown in chart 17.

Chart 17 Battery

Vehicle	2.0TCI	1.6TGDI	1.5TCI
Battery Model	12 V, 70 Ah (Maintenance-free battery)		12 V, 60 Ah (Regular model)

A

Active Speed Limit (If Equipped) 203
Adaptive Cruise Control System (If Equipped) 197
Adaptive Engine Control System 173
Adding Windshield Washer Fluid 327
Adjusting Steering Wheel 99
After Starting Engine 16
After Starting Engine 169
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 270
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (Automatic Air Conditioning) 268
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation (electric A/C) 258
Air Outlets Airflow Control 277
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 272
Airbag (SRS) 125
Airbag Malfunction Indicator 73
Alloy Wheel Maintenance 334
Anion Function (If Equipped) ...273
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 190
Anti-lock Brake System Malfunction Indicator 72
Anti-Theft System 87
Assist Grips 281
Audio Button 239
Audio Control Panel 228
Auto Hold 185
Auto Hold Indicator 72
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) 273
Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) 206
Automatic Transmission 177

B

Back Door 155
Battery 362
Before Starting Engine 15
Before Starting Engine 168
Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 212
Blower Advanced ON and Delayed OFF Function (If Equipped) 273
Bluetooth Phone 230
Brake 188
Brake System 358
Brake System Malfunction Indicator 71

C

Camera Diagnostic Function ... 250
Camera Layout 247
Center Armrest (Second Row) 282
Center Armrest Refrigeration Function (If Equipped) 274
Charging System Indicator 73
Check the Exhaust System 19
Checking and Replacing Air Conditioning Filter 330
Checking Battery 326
Checking Brake Fluid Level ...320
Checking Coolant Level 321
Checking Drive Belt 323
Checking Engine Oil Level 318
Checking Fuse 299
Checking Generator 326
Checking Radiator and Condenser 322
Checking Tire Inflation Pressure 323
Checking Tires 325
Checking Transmission Oil Level 320
Checking Wiper Blades 327
Chery Delivery Card 5
Child Restraint System Group 117
Child Restraint System Installation 121
Cleaning Interior Decoration and Interior Trim 337
Cleaning Reversing Radar Sensor 226
Cloudrive 230
Constant Speed Cruise System 195
Cooling System 356
Cup Holders 280

D

Daytime Running Indicator 70
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11
Door Lock Switch 96
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 214
Driving Mode (If Equipped) 182

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 22
Driving Recorder (DVR) 239
Driving Through Water 20
Dual Automatic Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 260

E
Electric Air Conditioning System (If Equipped) 252
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) 182
Electric Power Steering Malfunction Indicator 74
Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 174
Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission) 167
Electrical Parking Indicator 72
Electrical Parking Malfunction Indicator 72
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 189
Electronic Version of Audio Owner's Manual 231
Emergency Opening 310
Emergency Towing 302
Engine Compartment Overview 318
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 40
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 29
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 55
Engine Malfunction Indicator 74
Engine Performance 352
Engine Start Stop Switch 166
Engine Warming Up Function ...40
Engine Warming Up Function 29
Engine Warming Up Function 56
EPC Malfunction Indicator 74
ERA-GLONASS 310
ESP Indicator 73
ESP OFF Indicator 73
Exterior Maintenance 332

F
First Maintenance Card 338
Front Seat Belt Indicator 71
Front Seats 100
Front Washer Operation Instructions 137
Fuel Gauge 39
Fuel Gauge 28
Fuel Gauge 54
Fuel System 353
Fuel Tank Cap 160
Fuse 298
Fuse Box Distribution 298

G
Gearbox Parameters 361
Glossy Metal Maintenance 334

H
Hazard Light 288
Head Restraints 108
Headlight Combination Switch 139
Headlight Leveling Adjustment 332
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 98
High Beam Indicator 71
High Coolant Temperature Warning Indicator 73
Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 194
Hill Descent Indicator 72
Hill Descent Malfunction Indicator 72
Hood 154
Horn 97
How to Read This Manual 2

I
Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped) 171
If You Have a Flat Tire When Driving 290
If Your Vehicle Overheats 297
Index 2
Indicators and Malfunction Indicators 70
Information Display Area Overview 56
Information Display Area View 41
Inquiry Setting Screen 33
Inside Rear View Mirror 132
Installing Towing Eyelet 304
Instrument Cluster 27
Instrument Cluster 38
Instrument Cluster 53
Instrument Panel Configuration Overview 26

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) 215
Interior Maintenance 336
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 118

J
Jump-starting 307
Jump-starting Procedures 307

K
Keyless Entry 81
Keyless Entry (If Equipped) 84

L
Lane Assist System 208
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 210
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 211
LCD Display View Display Information 30
Light Fogging Instructions 145
Light Position 330
Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Indicator 74
Low Fuel Level Warning Indicator 73
Lubrication System 354

M
Maintenance Schedule 340
Manual Transmission (6MT) 175
Mechanical Key 79
Mechanical Switch 309
Media 230
Mode Adjustment 275
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 154
Moon Roof Remote Control Function (If equipped) 153

N
New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection 11

O
Off-road Driving 19
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) 271
Operation Precautions 192
Outside Rear View Mirror 133

P
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A) 151
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B) 152
Panoramic View Monitor 246
Parking on Slope 17
Parking Operations 16
Particulate Filter (GPF) (If Equipped) 173
Phone-link (If Equipped) 233
Pictorial Index 2
Position Light Indicator 70
Power Outlet 278
Power Windows 146
Proper Usage and Precautions for Airbag 127
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

R
Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 214
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 213
Rear Fog Indicator 71
Rear Magnified View 250
Rear Seat Belt Indicator (If Equipped) 71
Rear Wiper Operation Instructions 137
Reflective Vest 289
Removing Battery 305
Repair and Maintenance 316
Repairing Tire in Emergency (If Equipped) 290
Replacing Fuse 300
Replacing Smart Key Battery 79
Replacing Wiper Blades 329
Reversing Radar System 220
Reversing View Monitor and Vehicle Guideline 244
Rusty Prevention 335

S
Safety Check 14
Safety Instruction for Using Child Restraint System 115
Saving Fuel 13
Scheduled Maintenance 317
Seat Belt Pretensioner 112
Seat Belts 109
Second Row Seats (5-seat) 104
Second Row Seats (7-seat) 105
Service Arrangements 312
Service List 312
Service Requests 312
Service Satisfaction 312
Setting 231
Setting Screen 44

Setting Screen 58
Simple Checks 306
Smart Bracelet Key (If Equipped) 90
Smart Key 78
Spare Tools 289
Speed Limit Assist System 216
Speedometer 38
Speedometer 27
Speedometer 54
Starting a Flooded Engine 307
Starting and Turning off Engine in Emergency 170
Starting Engine 168
Starting Vehicle Remotely 95
Static/Dynamic Reverse Guideline 250
Steering System 357
Switching between single side view and panoramic view 249
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 281
Suspension System 356
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents 2
Tachometer 39
Tachometer 28
Tachometer 54
Third Row Seat (7-seat, Folding Seats) 107
Tire Chains 23
Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator 74
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 217
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Malfunction Warning 217
Tire Replacement 292
Tire Rotation 325
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 120
Towing Precautions 301
Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 204
Transmission Fluid 361
Transmission Malfunction Indicator 74
Turning off Engine 169
Turning On and Off Panoramic View Monitor System 247
Turning Signal Indicator 71

U

Usage Instructions 223
User Registration Certificate 4

V

Vacuum Booster 187
Vehicle Bottom Maintenance 335
Vehicle Dimensions 349
Vehicle Fortifying 88
Vehicle Identification Number 346
Vehicle Model and Type 348
Vehicle Performance 352
Vehicle Weight 350

W

Warning Triangle 289
Wheel Alignment 359
Wheel and Tire 360
When Driving 16
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 20
Window Jam Protection Function (if equipped) 149
Window Remote Control Function (if equipped) 148
Windshield Washer 362
Winter Driving Tips 21
Wiper Combination Switch 136
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 138
Wireless Charging 243

3

3D Left/Right Side View 249
3D Panoramic View 248

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd.